ZYXEL NETWORKS

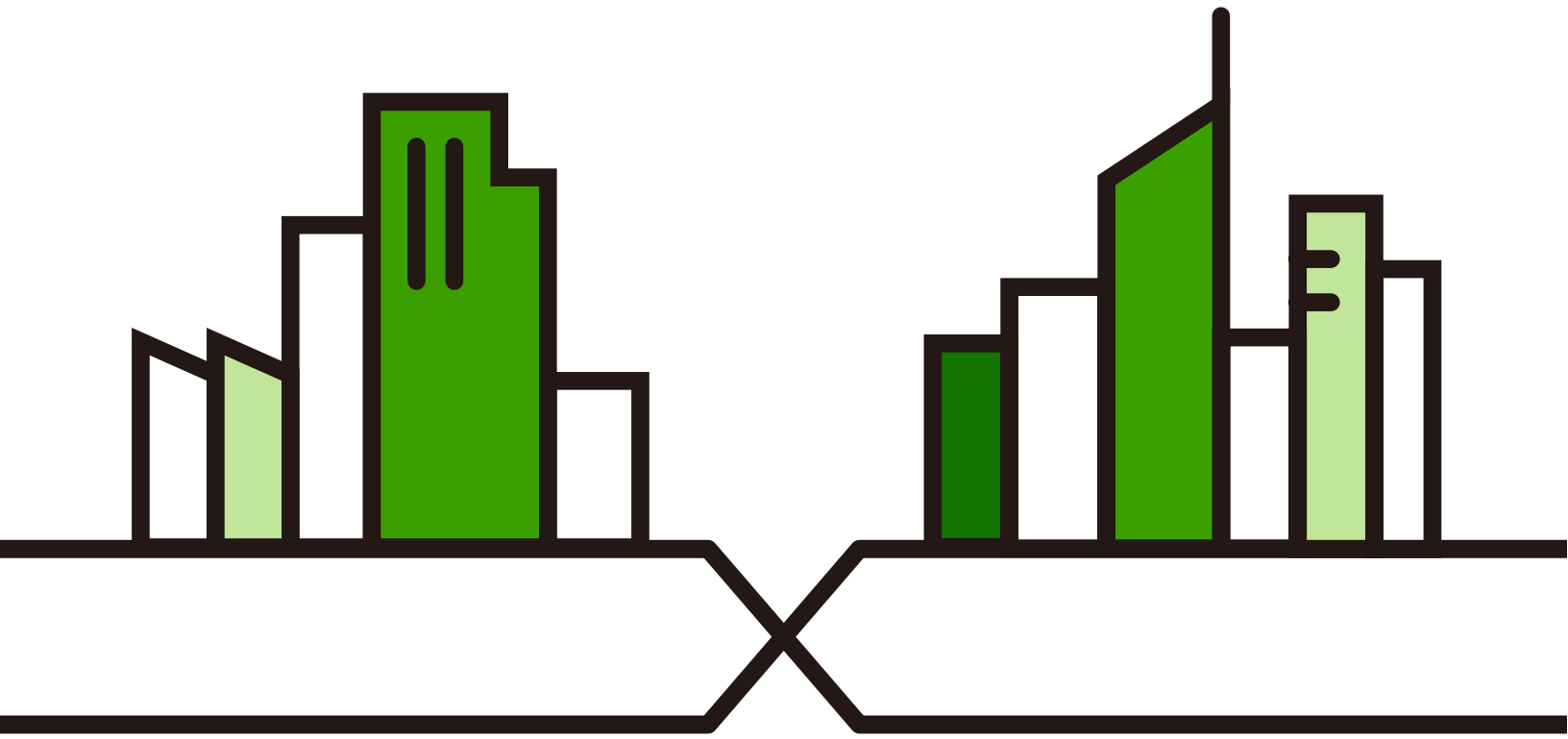
CLI Reference Guide

NWA/IAP/WAX/WBE Series

802.11 a/b/g/n/ac/ax/be Access Point

Default Login Details	
LAN IP Address	http://DHCP-assigned IP OR http://192.168.1.2
User Name	admin
Password	See the Zyxel Device label or 1234

Version 7.12-7.40 Ed. 1, 8/2026



IMPORTANT!
READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.
KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

This is a Reference Guide for a series of products intended for people who want to configure the Zyxel Device via Command Line Interface (CLI).

Note: Some commands or command options in this guide may not be available in your product. See your product's User's Guide for a list of supported features. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this guide is accurate.

How To Use This Guide

1 Read Command Line Interface for how to access and use the CLI (Command Line Interface).

2 Read User and Privilege Modes to learn about the CLI user and privilege modes.

Do not use commands not documented in this guide.

Related Documentation

- Quick Start Guide

  The Quick Start Guide shows how to connect the Zyxel Device and access the Web Configurator.

- User's Guide

  The User's Guide explains how to use the Web Configurator to configure the Zyxel Device.

- Nebula Control Center (NCC) User's Guide

  Go to *nebula.zyxel.com* or *support.zyxel.com* to get this User's Guide on how to configure the Zyxel Device using Nebula.

Note: It is recommended you use the Web Configurator to configure the Zyxel Device.

Icons Used in Figures

Figures in this guide may use the following generic icons. The Zyxel Device icon is not an exact representation of your device.

Zyxel Device	Router	AP Controller	Switch	Internet
				

Contents Overview

Table of Contents

PART I
Introduction

CHAPTER 1
Getting to Know your Zyxel Device

1.1 Overview

Your Zyxel Device is a wireless AP (Access Point). It extends the range of your existing wired network without additional wiring, providing easy network access to mobile users.

You can set the Zyxel Device to operate in either standalone AP or managed AP mode. When the Zyxel Device is in standalone AP mode, it can serve as a normal AP, as an RF monitor to search for rouge APs to help eliminate network threats (if it support rogue APs detection), or even as a root AP or a wireless repeater to establish wireless links with other APs in a WDS (Wireless Distribution System). A WDS is a wireless connection between two or more APs.

Your Zyxel Device's business-class reliability, SMB features, and centralized wireless management make it ideally suited for advanced service delivery in mission-critical networks. It uses Multiple BSSID and VLAN to provide simultaneous independent virtual APs. Additionally, innovations in roaming technology and QoS features eliminate voice call disruptions.

The Zyxel Device controls network access with Media Access Control (MAC) address filtering, and rogue Access Point (AP) detection. It also provides a high level of network traffic security, supporting IEEE 802.1x, Wi-Fi Protected Access 2 (WPA2), Wi-Fi Protected Access 3 (WPA3) and Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) data encryption.

1.2 Zyxel Device Product Feature

Please refer to the User's Guide for tables comparing Zyxel Device models and their features.

CHAPTER 2
Command Line Interface

This chapter describes how to access and use the CLI (Command Line Interface).

2.1 Overview

If you have problems with your Zyxel Device, customer support may request that you issue some of these commands to assist them in troubleshooting.

Use of undocumented commands or misconfiguration can damage the Zyxel Device and possibly render it unusable.

2.1.1 The Configuration File

When you configure the Zyxel Device using either the CLI (Command Line Interface) or the web configurator, the settings are saved as a series of commands in a configuration file on the Zyxel Device. You can store more than one configuration file on the Zyxel Device. However, only one configuration file is used at a time.

You can perform the following with a configuration file:

- Back up Zyxel Device configuration once the Zyxel Device is set up to work in your network.
- Restore Zyxel Device configuration.
- Save and edit a configuration file and upload it to multiple Zyxel Devices in your network to have the same settings.

Note: You may also edit a configuration file using a text editor.

2.2 Accessing the CLI

You can access the CLI using a terminal emulation program on a computer connected to the console port, or access the Zyxel Device using SSH (Secure SHell).

Note: The console port is not available in every model. Please check the User's Guide or datasheet, or refer to the product page at *www.zyxel.com* to see if your Zyxel Device has a console port.

Note: The Zyxel Device might force you to log out of your session if reauthentication time, lease time, or idle timeout is reached. See Chapter 10 on page 84 for more information about these settings.

2.2.1 Console Port

The default settings for the console port are as follows.

Table 1 Managing the Zyxel Device: Console Port

SETTING	VALUE
Speed	115200 bps
Data Bits	8
Parity	None
Stop Bit	1
Flow Control	Off

When you turn on your Zyxel Device, it performs several internal tests as well as line initialization. You can view the initialization information using the console port.

- Garbled text displays if your terminal emulation program's speed is set lower than the Zyxel Device's.
- No text displays if the speed is set higher than the Zyxel Device's.
- If changing your terminal emulation program's speed does not get anything to display, restart the Zyxel Device.
- If restarting the Zyxel Device does not get anything to display, contact your local customer support.

Figure 1 Console Port Power-on Display

```
FLASH: AMD 16M

BootModule Version: V1.13 | 06/25/2010 15:05:00
DRAM: Size = 256 Mbytes



DRAM POST: Testing: 262144K
```

After the initialization, the login screen displays.

Figure 2 Login Screen

```
Welcome to WAX640S-6E

Username:
```

Enter the user name and password at the prompts.

Note: The default login username is **admin** and password is **1234**. The username and password are case-sensitive.

2.2.2 SSH (Secure SHell)

You can use an SSH client program to access the CLI. The following figure shows an example using a text-based SSH client program. Refer to the documentation that comes with your SSH program for information on using it.

Note: The default login username is **admin** and password is **1234**. The username and password are case-sensitive.

Figure 3 SSH Login Example

```
C:\>ssh2 admin@192.168.1.2
Host key not found from database.
Key fingerprint:
xolor-takel-fipef-zevit-visom-gydog-vetan-bisol-lysob-cuvun-muxex
You can get a public key's fingerprint by running
% ssh-keygen -F publickey.pub
on the keyfile.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes

Host key saved to C:/Documents and Settings/user/Application Data/SSH/
hostkeys/
ey_22_192.168.1.2.pub
host key for 192.168.1.2, accepted by user Tue Aug 09 2022 07:38:28
admin's password:
Authentication successful.
```

2.3 How to Find Commands in this Guide

You can simply look for the feature chapter to find commands. In addition, you can use the List of Commands (Alphabetical) at the end of the guide. This section lists the commands in alphabetical order that they appear in this guide.

If you are looking at the CLI Reference Guide electronically, you might have additional options (for example, bookmarks or **Find...**) as well.

2.4 How Commands Are Explained

Each chapter explains the commands for one keyword. The chapters are divided into the following sections.

2.4.1 Background Information

Note: See the User's Guide for background information about most features.

This section provides background information about features that you cannot configure in the web configurator. In addition, this section identifies related commands in other chapters.

2.4.2 Command Input Values

This section lists common input values for the commands for the feature in one or more tables

2.4.3 Command Summary

This section lists the commands for the feature in one or more tables.

2.4.4 Command Examples

This section contains any examples for the commands in this feature.

2.4.5 Command Syntax

The following conventions are used in this User's Guide.

- A command or keyword in `courier new` must be entered literally as shown. Do not abbreviate.
- Values that you need to provide are in *`italics`*.
- Required fields that have multiple choices are enclosed in curly brackets `{}`.
- A range of numbers is enclosed in angle brackets <>.
- Optional fields are enclosed in square brackets `[]`.
- The | symbol means OR.

2.4.6 Changing the Password

It is highly recommended that you change the password for accessing the Zyxel Device. See Section 10.2 on page 84 for the appropriate commands.

2.5 CLI Modes

You run CLI commands in one of several modes.

Table 2 CLI Modes

	USER	PRIVILEGE	CONFIGURATION	SUB-COMMAND
What **User** users can do	• Look at (but not run) available commands	Unable to access	Unable to access	Unable to access
What **Limited-Admin** users can do	• Look at system information (like **Status** screen) • Run basic diagnostics	• Look at system information (like **Status** screen) • Run basic diagnostics	Unable to access	Unable to access
What **Admin** users can do	• Look at system information (like **Status** screen) • Run basic diagnostics	• Look at system information (like **Status** screen) • Run basic diagnostics	• Configure simple features (such as an address object) • Create or remove complex parts (such as an interface)	• Configure complex parts (such as an interface) in the Zyxel Device
How you enter it	Log in to the Zyxel Device	Enter **enable** in **User** mode	Enter **configure terminal** in **User** or **Privilege** mode	Enter the command used to create the specific part in **Configuration** mode

Table 2 CLI Modes (continued)

	USER	PRIVILEGE	CONFIGURATION	SUB-COMMAND

What the prompt looks like	`Router>`	`Router#`	`Router(config)#`	(varies by part)
				`Router(config-if-brg)#`
				`...`

How you exit it	Enter **exit**	Enter **disable**	Enter **exit**	Enter **exit**

See Chapter 10 on page 84 for more information about the user types. **User** users can only log in, look at (but not run) the available commands in **User** mode, and log out. **Limited-Admin** users can look at the configuration in the web configurator and CLI, and they can run basic diagnostics in the CLI. **Admin** users can configure the Zyxel Device in the web configurator or CLI.

At the time of writing, there is not much difference between **User** and **Privilege** mode for admin users. This is reserved for future use.

2.6 Shortcuts and Help

2.6.1 List of Available Commands

A list of valid commands can be found by typing ? or [TAB] at the command prompt. To view a list of available commands within a command group, enter `<command> ?` or `<command>` [TAB].

Figure 4 Help: Available Commands Example 1

```
Router> ?
<cr>
apply
atse
clear
configure
------------------[Snip]--------------------
shutdown
test
traceroute
wlan-report
write
Router>
```

Figure 5 Help: Available Command Example 2

```
Router> show ?
<wlan ap interface>
aaa
account
app-watch-dog
apply
arp-table
------------------[Snip]--------------------
wlan-security-profile
wlan-ssid-profile
wtp-logging
Router> show
```

2.6.2 List of Sub-commands or Required User Input

To view detailed help information for a command, enter `<command> <sub command> ?`.

Figure 6 Help: Sub-command Information Example

```
Router(config)# ip ssh server ?
;
<cr>
cert
port
|
Router(config)# ip ssh server
```

Figure 7 Help: Required User Input Example

```
Router(config)# ip ssh server port ?
<1..65535>
Router(config)# ip ssh server port
```

2.6.3 Entering Partial Commands

The CLI does not accept partial or incomplete commands. You may enter a unique part of a command and press [TAB] to have the Zyxel Device automatically display the full command.

For example, if you enter **config** and press [TAB] , the full command of **configure** automatically displays.

If you enter a partial command that is not unique and press [TAB], the Zyxel Device displays a list of commands that start with the partial command.

Figure 8 Non-Unique Partial Command Example

```
Router# c [TAB]
clear      configure  copy
Router# co [TAB]
configure  copy
```

2.6.4 Entering a ? in a Command

Typing a ? (question mark) usually displays help information. However, some commands allow you to input a ?, for example as part of a string. Press [CTRL+V] on your keyboard to enter a ? without the Zyxel Device treating it as a help query.

2.6.5 Command History

The Zyxel Device keeps a list of commands you have entered for the current CLI session. You can use any commands in the history again by pressing the up (↑) or down (↓) arrow key to scroll through the previously used commands and press [ENTER].

2.6.6 Navigation

Press [CTRL]+A to move the cursor to the beginning of the line. Press [CTRL]+E to move the cursor to the end of the line.

2.6.7 Erase Current Command

Press [CTRL]+U to erase whatever you have currently typed at the prompt (before pressing [ENTER]).

2.6.8 The no Commands

When entering the no commands described in this document, you may not need to type the whole command. For example, with the "`[no] mss <536..1452>`" command, you use "`mss 536`" to specify the MSS value. But to disable the MSS setting, you only need to type "`no mss`" instead of "no mss 536".

2.7 Input Values

You can use the ? or [TAB] to get more information about the next input value that is required for a command. In some cases, the next input value is a string whose length and allowable characters may not be displayed in the screen. For example, in the following example, the next input value is a string called `<description>`.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface lan
Router(config-if-brg)# description ?
<description>
```

The following table provides more information about input values like `<description>`.

Table 3 Input-Value Formats for Strings in CLI Commands

TAG	# VALUES	LEGAL VALUES
*	1	*
all	--	ALL

Table 3 Input-Value Formats for Strings in CLI Commands (continued)

TAG	# VALUES	LEGAL VALUES
authentication key	32-40 16-20	“0x” or “0X” + 32-40 hexadecimal values alphanumeric or ;|`~!@#$%^&*()_+\\{}':,./<>=-
	Used in MD5 authentication keys and text authentication key	
	0-16	alphanumeric or _-
	Used in text authentication keys	
	0-8	alphanumeric or _-
certificate name	1-31	alphanumeric or ;`~!@#$%^&()_+[\]{}',.=-
community string	0-63	alphanumeric or .- first character: alphanumeric or -
connection_id	1+	alphanumeric or -_:
contact	1-61	alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=?;!*#@$_%-.
country code	0 or 2	alphanumeric
custom signature file name	0-30	alphanumeric or _-. first character: letter
description	Used in keyword criteria for log entries	
	1-64	alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=?;!*#@$_%-.
	Used in other commands	
	1-61	alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=?;!*#@$_%-
distinguished name	1-511	alphanumeric, spaces, or .@=,_-
domain name	0+	lower-case letters, numbers, or .-
	Used in ip dns server	
	1-248	alphanumeric or .- first character: alphanumeric or -
	Used in domainname, ip dhcp pool, and ip domain	
	1-255	alphanumeric or ._- first character: alphanumeric or -
email	1-63	alphanumeric or .@_-
e-mail	1-64	alphanumeric or .@_-
encryption key	16-64 8-32	“0x” or “0X” + 16-64 hexadecimal values alphanumeric or ;|`~!@#$%^&*()_+\\{}':,./ <>=-
file name	0-31	alphanumeric or _-
filter extension	1-256	alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=?;!*#@$_%.-
fqdn	Used in ip dns server	
	1-253	alphanumeric or .- first character: alphanumeric or -
	Used in ip, time server, device HA, certificates, and interface ping check	
	1-255	alphanumeric or .- first character: alphanumeric or -
full file name	0-256	alphanumeric or _/.-

Table 3 Input-Value Formats for Strings in CLI Commands (continued)

TAG	# VALUES	LEGAL VALUES
hostname	Used in hostname command	
	1-64	alphanumeric or .-_ first character: alphanumeric or -
	Used in other commands	
	1-253	alphanumeric or .- first character: alphanumeric or -
import configuration file	1-26+".conf"	alphanumeric or ;`~!@#$%^&()_+[]{}',.=- add ".conf" at the end
import shell script	1-26+".zysh"	alphanumeric or ;`~!@#$%^&()_+[]{}',.=- add ".zysh" at the end
initial string	1-64	alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=!*#@$_%-.&
key length	--	512, 768, 1024, 1536, 2048
license key	25	"S-" + 6 upper-case letters or numbers + "-" + 16 upper-case letters or numbers
mac address	--	aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff (hexadecimal)
mail server fqdn		lower-case letters, numbers, or -.
name	1-31	alphanumeric or _-
notification message	1-81	alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,/:=?;!*#@$_%-
password: less than 15 chars	1-15	alphanumeric or `~!@#$%^&*()_\-+={}|\;:'<,>./
password: less than 8 chars	1-8	alphanumeric or ;/?:@&=+$\.-_!~*'()%,#$
password	Used in user and ip	
	1-63	alphanumeric or `~!@#$%^&*()_-+={}|\;:'<,>./
	Used in e-mail log profile SMTP authentication	
	1-63	alphanumeric or `~!@#$%^&*()_-+={}|\;:'<>./
	Used in device HA synchronization	
	1-63	alphanumeric or ~#%^*_-={}:,.
	Used in registration	
	6-20	alphanumeric or .@_-
phone number	1-20	numbers or ,+
preshared key	16-64	"0x" or "0X" + 16-64 hexadecimal values alphanumeric or ;|`~!@#$%^&*()_+\{}':,./<>=-
profile name	1-31	alphanumeric or _- first character: letters or _-
proto name	1-16	lower-case letters, numbers, or -
protocol name	1-31	alphanumeric or _- first character: letters or _-
quoted string less than 255 chars	1-255	alphanumeric, spaces, or ;/?:@&=+$\.- _!~*'()%,
quoted string less than 63 chars	1-63	alphanumeric, spaces, or ;/?:@&=+$\.-_!~*'()%

Table 3 Input-Value Formats for Strings in CLI Commands (continued)

TAG	# VALUES	LEGAL VALUES
quoted string	0+	alphanumeric, spaces, or punctuation marks enclosed in double quotation marks (“) must put a backslash (\) before double quotation marks that are part of input value itself
realm	1-253	alphanumeric or -_ first character: alphanumeric or -_ used in domain authentication
service name	0-63	alphanumeric or -_@$./
spi	2-8	hexadecimal
string less than 15 chars	1-15	alphanumeric or -_
string: less than 63 chars	1-63	alphanumeric or `~!@#$%^&*()_-+={}|\;:'<,>./
string	1+	alphanumeric or -_@
subject	1-61	alphanumeric, spaces, or '()+,./:=?;!*#@$_%-
system type	0-2	hexadecimal
timezone [-+]*hh*	--	-12 through +12 (with or without “+”)
url	1-511	alphanumeric or '()+,/:.=?;!*#@$_%-
url	“http://”+ “https://”+	alphanumeric or ;/?:@&=+$\.-_!~*'()%, starts with “http://” or “https://” may contain one pound sign (#)
user name	1-31	alphanumeric or _- first character: letters or _-
username	1-31	alphanumeric or _- first character: alphanumeric or _- domain authorization
username	6-20	alphanumeric or .@_- registration
user name	1+	alphanumeric or -_. logging commands
user@domainname	1-80	alphanumeric or .@_-
vrrp group name: less than 15 chars	1-15	alphanumeric or _-
week-day sequence, i.e. 1=first,2=second	1	1-4
xauth method	1-31	alphanumeric or _-
xauth password	1-31	alphanumeric or ;|`~!@#$%^&*()_+\{}':,./<>=-
mac address	0-12 (even number)	hexadecimal for example: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx

2.8 Saving Configuration Changes

Use the `write` command to save the current configuration to the Zyxel Device.

Note: Always save the changes before you log out after each management session. All unsaved changes will be lost after the system restarts.

2.9 Logging Out

Enter the `exit` or `end` command in configure mode to go to privilege mode.

Enter the `exit` command in user mode or privilege mode to log out of the CLI.

CHAPTER 3
User and Privilege Modes

This chapter describes how to use these two modes.

3.1 User And Privilege Modes

This is the mode you are in when you first log into the CLI. (Do not confuse 'user mode' with types of user accounts the Zyxel Device uses. See Users for more information about the user types. 'User' type accounts can only run 'exit' in this mode. However, they may need to log into the device in order to be authenticated for 'user-aware' policies, for example a firewall rule that a particular user is exempt from.)

Enter 'enable' to go to 'privilege mode'. No password is required. All commands can be run from here except those marked with an asterisk. Many of these commands are for trouble-shooting purposes, for example the htm (hardware test module) and debug commands. Customer support may ask you to run some of these commands and send the results if you need assistance troubleshooting your device.

For admin logins, all commands are visible in 'user mode' but not all can be run there. The following table displays which commands can be run in 'user mode'. All commands can be run in 'privilege mode'.

The `psm` commands are for Zyxel's internal manufacturing process.

Table 4 User (U) and Privilege (P) Mode Commands

COMMAND	MODE	DESCRIPTION
`apply`	P	Applies a configuration file.
`atse`	U/P	Displays the seed code
`clear`	U/P	Clears system or debug logs or DHCP binding.
`configure`	U/P	Use 'configure terminal' to enter configuration mode.
`copy`	P	Copies configuration files.
`daily-report`	U/P	Sets how and where to send daily reports and what reports to send.
`debug (*)`	U/P	For support personnel only! The device needs to have the debug flag enabled.
`delete`	P	Deletes configuration files.
`details`	P	Performs diagnostic commands.
`diag`	P	Provided for support personnel to collect internal system information. It is not recommended that you use these.
`diag-info`	P	Has the Zyxel Device create a new diagnostic file.
`dir`	P	Lists files in a directory.
`disable`	U/P	Goes from privilege mode to user mode
`enable`	U/P	Goes from user mode to privilege mode
`exit`	U/P	Goes to a previous mode or logs out.

Table 4 User (U) and Privilege (P) Mode Commands (continued)

COMMAND	MODE	DESCRIPTION
`interface`	U/P	Dials or disconnects an interface.
`no packet-trace`	U/P	Turns off packet tracing.
`nslookup`	U/P	Resolves an IP address to a host name and vice-versa.
`packet-trace`	U/P	Performs a packet trace.
`ping`	U/P	Pings an IP address or host name.
`psm`	U/P	Goes to psm (product support module) mode for setting product parameters. You may need to use the htm commands if your customer support Engineer asks you to during troubleshooting. Note: These commands are for Zyxel's internal manufacturing process.
`reboot`	P	Restarts the device.
`release`	P	Releases DHCP information from an interface.
`rename`	P	Renames a configuration file.
`renew`	P	Renews DHCP information for an interface.
`run`	P	Runs a script.
`setenv`	U/P	Turns stop-on-error on (terminates booting if an error is found in a configuration file) or off (ignores configuration file errors and continues booting).
`show`	U/P	Displays command statistics. See the associated command chapter in this guide.
`shutdown`	P	Writes all d data to disk and stops the system processes. It does not turn off the power.
`test aaa`	U/P	Tests whether the specified user name can be successfully authenticated by an external authentication server.
`traceroute`	P	Traces the route to the specified host name or IP address.
`write`	P	Saves the current configuration to the Zyxel Device. All unsaved changes are lost after the Zyxel Device restarts.

Subsequent chapters in this guide describe the configuration commands. User/privilege mode commands that are also configuration commands (for example, 'show') are described in more detail in the related configuration command chapter.

3.1.1 Debug Commands

Debug commands are for Zyxel service personnel use only. Please only use these commands if instructed by customer support.

Table 5 Debug Commands

COMMAND SYNTAX	DESCRIPTION	LINUX COMMAND EQUIVALENT
`debug app show l7protocol (*)`	Shows app patrol protocol list	`> cat /etc/l7_protocols/protocol.list`
`debug ca (*)`	Certificate debug commands	
`debug device-ha (*)`	Device HA debug commands	
`debug gui (*)`	Web Configurator related debug commands	
`debug hardware (*)`	Hardware debug commands	

Table 5 Debug Commands (continued)

COMMAND SYNTAX	DESCRIPTION	LINUX COMMAND EQUIVALENT
`debug interface`	Interface debug commands	
`debug interface ifconfig`	Shows system interfaces detail	`> ifconfig [interface]`
`debug ip dns`	DNS debug commands	
`debug logging`	System logging debug commands	
`debug manufacture`	Manufacturing related debug commands	
`debug network arpignore (*)`	Enable/Display the ignoring of ARP responses for interfaces which don't own the IP address	`cat /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/*/arp_ignore`
`debug policy-route (*)`	Policy route debug command	
`debug [cmdexec|corefile|ip|kernel|mac-id-rewrite|observer|switch|system|zyinetpkt] (*)`	ZLD internal debug commands	

CHAPTER 4
Getting Started

This chapter shows you how to use the Zyxel Device's various features using CLI.

Device Settings:

- Change the Management IP Address
- Rename Your Zyxel Device
- Limit Bandwidth Usage in a WiFi Network
- Configure Access to the Zyxel Device
- Check Country Code and Set the Channel Width

Network Security:

- Change or Reset the Account Login Password
- Change Security for a WiFi Network
- Set Up a RADIUS Server

WiFi Network Setup:

- Set the Operation Mode
- Change the WiFi Network Name
- Set Up Multiple WiFi Networks in AP Mode
- Optimize WiFi Settings for Clients
- Set Multi-Link Operation (MLO) for Smart Mesh

Device Maintenance:

- Upgrade the Firmware
- Back Up and Restore the Device Configuration

Commands for troubleshooting:

- View Logs
- Collect Diagnostic Information
- Reboot the Zyxel Device
- Configure NCC Discovery
- Test Network Throughput

4.1 Change the Management IP Address

Change the default management IP address of the Zyxel Device. Do not assign an address already in use on the network. If IP addresses are duplicated, you may be unable to access the Zyxel Device.

The following command sets the LAN Ethernet interface to use '1.1.1.1', netmask '255.255.255.0', and gateway address '1.2.3.4'.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config)# manager ip gateway 1.2.3.4
Router(config)# write
```

The following command tags the outgoing traffic from the Zyxel Device with VLAN ID 2.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# manager ap vlan vlan-id 2 tag
Router(config)# write
```

The following command sets the LAN Ethernet interface to use a dynamic IP address.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip address dhcp
Router(config)# write
```

The following command sets the Zyxel Device to use a static DNS server IP address. This is useful when the DNS server assigned by the DHCP server cannot resolve to specific domain names and you want to set the Zyxel Device to use another DNS server.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip dns 3.1.1.2
Router(config)# write
```

The following command shows all the interfaces on the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> show interface summary all
No. Name            Status              IP Address      Mask            IP
Assignment Port
================================================================================
1   lan             Up                   x.x.x.x    255.255.252.0   DHCP cli
ent   n/a
2   wlan-1          n/a                  n/a             n/a             n/a
n/a
3   wlan-1-1        Up                 0.0.0.0         0.0.0.0         static
n/a
4   wlan-2          n/a                  n/a             n/a             n/a
n/a
5   wlan-2-1        Up                 0.0.0.0         0.0.0.0         static
n/a
```

4.2 Rename Your Zyxel Device

Change the default system name to distinguish the Zyxel Device from other devices on the network, which may otherwise cause confusion for network administrators.

The following command sets the hostname of your Zyxel Device to Alice.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# hostname Alice
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show fqdn
host name  : Alice
domain name: none
FQDN       : Alice
```

4.3 Limit Bandwidth Usage in a WiFi Network

Restricting network bandwidth for each WiFi client ensures that all clients have equitable access to the network, preventing a few WiFi clients from monopolizing the bandwidth.

The following command sets the maximum data rate from the Zyxel Device to each WiFi client to 100 Mbps. Downlink refers to the outgoing data traffic from the Zyxel Device to the WiFi clients.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan-ssid-profile default
Router(config-wlan-ssid default)# downlink-rate-limit 100 mbps
Router(config-wlan-ssid default)# exit
Router(config)# write
```

The following command sets the maximum data rate from each WiFi client to the Zyxel Device to 130 Mbps. Uplink refers to the incoming data traffic from the WiFi clients to the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan-ssid-profile Wiz_SSID_1
Router(config-wlan-ssid Wiz_SSID_1)# uplink-rate-limit 130 mbps
Router(config-wlan-ssid Wiz_SSID_1)# exit
Router(config)# write
```

4.4 Configure Access to the Zyxel Device

Remote management determines which services are allowed to access the Zyxel Device. This section shows you how to configure WAN access through HTTP, HTTPS, SSH or FTP to the Zyxel Device.

- Access the Zyxel Device through HTTP
- Access the Zyxel Device through HTTPS
- Access the Zyxel Device through SSH
- Access the Zyxel Device through FTP

4.4.1 Access the Zyxel Device through HTTP

The following command disables HTTP access to the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# no ip http server
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show ip http server status
active               : no
port                 : 80
authentication method: default
```

4.4.2 Access the Zyxel Device through HTTPS

The following command allows you to access the Zyxel Device through HTTPS.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# ip http secure-server
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show ip http server secure status
active               : yes
port                 : 443
certificate          : default
force redirect       : yes
authentication client: no
cipher suite         : rc4 aes des 3des
```

The following command sets the encryption algorithms to 3des and aes.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# ip http secure-server cipher-suite 3des aes
Router(config)# write
```

The following command changes the HTTPS port for accessing the Zyxel Device to 4433. Use the new port to access the Zyxel Device.

Note: Well-known ports: 0 to 1023 – don't use them. Registered ports: 1024 to 49151 – use one of these.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# ip http secure-port 4433
Router(config)# write
```

4.4.3 Access the Zyxel Device through SSH

SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network.

The following command allows you to access the Zyxel Device through SSH.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# ip ssh server
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show ip ssh server status
active      : yes
port        : 22
certificate : default
```

This command changes the SSH port for accessing the Zyxel Device to 2222. Use the new port to access the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# ip ssh server port 2222
Router(config)# write
```

4.4.4 Access the Zyxel Device through FTP

You can upload the Zyxel Device's firmware and configuration files using FTP. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

The following command disables FTP access on the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# no ip ftp server
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show ip ftp server status
active     : no
port       : 21
certificate: default
TLS        : no
```

4.5 Check Country Code and Set the Channel Width

Wireless channels and channel widths vary depending on the wireless regulations of the country or region. This tutorial explains how to:

- Check the Country Code.
- View the Available Channels for Each Frequency Band.
- Configure the Channel Width.

4.5.1 Check the Country Code

The following command allows you to check the country code of the Zyxel Device. In the example below, 'FF' represents the US regulatory domain and corresponds to the 'US' country code for the United States.

To find your country code, refer to the ISO 3166-1 Alpha-2 code for your country.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show wlan country-code
Default Country Code: FF
```

4.5.2 View the Available Channels for Each Frequency Band

The table below shows the possible range of channel numbers for each frequency band. The channels actually available vary by country and channel width.

Table 6 Possible Channel Number Ranges

BAND	CHANNELS
2.4 GHz (11G)	1 ~ 14
5 GHz (11A)	36 ~ 165
6 GHz (6G)	1 ~ 233

The following command displays the channels available for a specified frequency band, channel width, and country. In the following example, the command displays the 2.4 GHz channels available in the United States that support both 20 MHz and 40 MHz channel widths.

```
Router(config)# show wlan channels 11G cw 20/40 country US
Available Channels: 100
No. Channel  string                                Default
================================================================================
====
1   1        1                                     no
2   2        2                                     no
3   3        3                                     no
4   4        4                                     no
5   5        5                                     no
6   6        6                                     yes
7   7        7                                     no
8   8        8                                     no
9   9        9                                     no
10  10       10                                    no
11  11       11                                    no
```

In the following example, the command displays the 5 GHz channels available in the United States that support all four channel widths: 20, 40, 80, and 160 MHz. DFS channels are marked with (DFS) after the channel numbers. Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) allows the Zyxel Device to use channels in the 5 GHz band that are also used by military and weather radar systems.

```
Router(config)# show wlan channels 11A cw 20/40/80/160 country US
Available Channels: 100
No. Channel  string                                Default
================================================================================
====
1   36       36                                    no
2   40       40                                    no
3   44       44                                    yes
4   48       48                                    no
5   52       52  - (DFS)                           no
6   56       56  - (DFS)                           no
7   60       60  - (DFS)                           no
8   64       64  - (DFS)                           no
9   100      100 - (DFS)                           no
10  104      104 - (DFS)                           no
11  108      108 - (DFS)                           no
12  112      112 - (DFS)                           no
13  116      116 - (DFS)                           no
14  120      120 - (DFS)                           no
15  124      124 - (DFS)                           no
16  128      128 - (DFS)                           no
```

PSCs are specific channels in the 6 GHz band. WiFi 6E and WiFi 7 clients scan these channels first when searching for compatible Zyxel Device. This reduces the need to scan the entire 6 GHz band and helps WiFi clients discover the Zyxel Device more efficiently.

The following example displays the available 6 GHz Preferred Scanning Channels (PSCs) with a 320 MHz channel width for the United States. See the `Channel` column for the PSC channel numbers.

```
Router(config)# show wlan channels 6G cw 320 country US psc
Available Channels: 100
No. Channel  string                                Default
================================================================================
====
1   5        5                                     yes
2   21       21                                    no
3   37       37                                    no
4   53       53                                    no
5   69       69                                    no
6   85       85                                    no
7   101      101                                   no
8   117      117                                   no
9   133      133                                   no
10  149      149                                   no
11  165      165                                   no
12  181      181                                   no
13  197      197                                   no
14  213      213                                   no
```

The following example uses Sri Lanka (LK) as the country code and shows that no 6 GHz channels are available with a 320 MHz channel width.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show wlan channels 6G cw 320 country LK
Available Channels: C4
No. Channel  string                              Default
================================================================================
Router(config)#
```

4.5.3 Configure the Channel Width

The following command configures the channel width to 320 MHz for the ‘default’ radio profile.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan radio profile default
Router(config-wlan-radio default)# ch-width
<20, 20/40, 20/40/80, 20/40/80/160, 240, 320>
Router(config-wlan-radio default)# ch-width 320
Router(config-wlan-radio default)# exit
```

Note: The `ch-width 320` command is supported only on Zyxel Devices that support the 6GHz band with a 320 MHz channel width and in countries where 320 MHz channels are permitted.

The following example shows the error message displayed when the Zyxel Device or the selected country does not support a 320 MHz channel width for the 6GHz band.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config-wlan-radio default)# ch-width 320
Router(config-wlan-radio default)# exit
% Channel 5 is not valid in the current country/bandwidth setting.
```

4.6 Change or Reset the Account Login Password

You are required to change the password the first time you log into the Zyxel Device. A prompt will appear when you log in for the first time. Set a new password containing 4 to 63 printable characters. Spaces are not allowed.

```
For enhanced security, you are required to change the admin default
password.
New password:
```

Change the login password of the Web Configurator and CLI to help secure your account. The following command changes the admin account’s login password to **zyxel1234**.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# username admin password zyxel234 user-type admin
Total 0 user has been forced logout
Router(config)# write
```

To enhance your account's security, you can configure the password complexity. The following command enforces a complex user password consisting of at least 8 characters and at most 64. The password must have:

- At least 1 upper case letter.
- At least 1 lower case letter.
- At least 1 number
- At least 1 special character from the keyboard, such as `~!@#$%^&*()_+={}|;:'<,>./\"-

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# password complexity-verify
Router(config)# show password complexity-verify status
password complexity verify status: yes
```

If you forget your account password, you can reset it to default settings. The default password is unique to each Zyxel Device and is shown on the label. If your Zyxel Device does not have a password on the label, use "1234". The following command resets the **admin** account password to the default settings.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# username admin use-unique-default-password user-type admin
Total 0 user has been forced logout
```

4.7 Change Security for a WiFi Network

Changing the security settings on a WiFi network enhances protection by blocking unauthorized client devices. This option is ideal for small WiFi networks with a few WiFi clients. For WiFi networks with a lot of clients, see Section 4.8 on page 37 for more information. You cannot set up both a pre-shared key and a RADIUS server for a security profile at the same time.

The default security profiles on the Zyxel Device are as follows. To see the security profiles on your Zyxel Device, type '`show wlan-security-profile all`'.

Table 7 Default Security Profiles

HAS THE ZYXEL DEVICE RUN THE SETUP WIZARD?	SECURITY PROFILES
Yes	If the Zyxel Device has run the setup wizard, it will automatically create these security profiles: default, Wiz_SEC_Profile_1, Wiz_SEC_Profile_2, Wiz_SEC_Profile_3, Wiz_SEC_Profile_4, Wiz_SEC_Profile_5, Wiz_SEC_Profile_6, Wiz_SEC_Profile_7, Wiz_SEC_Profile_8
No	default

The following command changes the security mode of the default security profile to **wpa3**.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan-security-profile default
Router(config-wlan-security default)# mode wpa3
Router(config-wlan-security default)# exit
Router(config)# write
```

The following command changes the pre-shared key of the default security profile to **zaaack16**.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan-security-profile default
Router(config-wlan-security default)# wpa-psk zaaack16
Router(config-wlan-security default)# exit
Router(config)# write
```

4.8 Set Up a RADIUS Server

Setting up a RADIUS server for your Zyxel Device allows centralized user authentication and authorization, which enhances network security. This option is ideal for enterprise users who need to manage many WiFi clients. You cannot set up both a pre-shared key and a RADIUS server on the same security profile.

The following command sets up a RADIUS server for your Zyxel Device. See Table 7 on page 36 to see the default security profiles on your Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan-security-profile Wiz_SEC_Profile_1
Router(config-wlan-security Wiz_SEC_Profile_1)# server-auth 1 activate
Router(config-wlan-security Wiz_SEC_Profile_1)# server-auth 1 ip address
1.1.1.1 port 20 secret zoooe123
Router(config-wlan-security Wiz_SEC_Profile_1)# exit
Router(config)# write
```

4.9 Set the Operation Mode

This section shows you how to:

- Set a Radio Profile to AP Mode
- Set a Radio Profile to Root AP Mode
- Set a Radio Profile to Repeater Mode

The Zyxel Device has different Operation Modes (OP modes) to act as different roles in a network. You can choose different OP modes for each radios.

The Zyxel Device supports the following OP modes:

- AP Mode - Choose this you want WiFi clients to connect to the Zyxel Device.

- Root AP Mode - Choose this if you want the Zyxel Device to wirelessly extend your WiFi network and also allow WiFi clients to connect to the Zyxel Device.
- Repeater Mode - Choose this if you want the Zyxel Device to wirelessly extend your WiFi network (WDS).

Note: Not all OP modes are supported by all models. See Zyxel Device Product Feature to see the OP modes your Zyxel Device supports.

The default radio profiles and their corresponding slots on the Zyxel Device are as follows. To see the radio profiles on the Zyxel Device, type the 'show wlan slot<1..3>' command.

Table 8 Radio Profiles and Slots

HAS THE ZYXEL DEVICE RUN THE SETUP WIZARD?	BANDS	PROFILES	SLOTS
Yes	2.4 Ghz	Wiz_Radio_24G	slot1
	5 Ghz	Wiz_Radio_5G	slot2
	6 Ghz	Wiz_Radio_6G	slot3
No	2.4 Ghz	default	slot1
	5 Ghz	default2	slot2
	6 Ghz	default3	slot3

Note: Not all models support 6 Ghz band. See Zyxel Device Product Feature to see the bands your Zyxel Device supports.

4.9.1 Set a Radio Profile to AP Mode

The following command sets the 6G radio to AP mode and assigns the created radio profile **Wiz_Radio_6G** to the radio. See Radio Profiles and Slots to see the default profiles and slots on the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan slot3
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ap profile Wiz_Radio_6G
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
primary_channel_check: channel 5
Setup 6G 11BE EHT320 channel 5
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show wlan slot3
slot: slot3
 card: none
 Role: ap
 Profile: Wiz_Radio_6G
 SSID_profile_1: Wiz_SSID_1
 SSID_profile_2:
 SSID_profile_3:
 SLOT_3_Output_power: 30dBm
 Activate: yes
 WDS_Role: none
 WDS_Profile: default
 WDS_uplink: auto
 WDS_Downlink: unlimited
 Band: 6G
 SSID_profile_1_band: 2.4G/5G/6G
 SSID_profile_2_band:
 SSID_profile_3_band:
```

4.9.2 Set a Radio Profile to Root AP Mode

The following command sets the 6G radio to Root AP mode and assigns the created radio profile **Wiz_Radio_6G** to the radio. See Table 8 on page 38 to see the default profiles and slots on the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan slot3
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds_profile default
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds-role rootap
primary_channel_check: channel 5
Setup 6G 11BE EHT320 channel 5
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show wlan slot3
slot: slot3
 card: none
 Role: ap
 Profile: Wiz_Radio_6G
 SSID_profile_1: Wiz_SSID_1
 SSID_profile_2:
 SSID_profile_3:
 SLOT_3_Output_power: 30dBm
 Activate: yes
 WDS_Role: rootap
 WDS_Profile: default
 WDS_uplink: auto
 WDS_Downlink: unlimited
 Band: 6G
 SSID_profile_1_band: 2.4G/5G/6G
 SSID_profile_2_band:
 SSID_profile_3_band:
```

4.9.3 Set a Radio Profile to Repeater Mode

The following command sets the 5G radio to Repeater mode and assigns the created radio profile **Wiz_Radio_5G** to the radio. See Radio Profiles and Slots to see the default profiles and slots on the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan slot2
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds_profile default
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds-role repeater
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Setup 5G 11BE EHT160 channel 44
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show wlan slot2
slot: slot2
 card: none
 Role: ap
 Profile: Wiz_Radio_5G
 SSID_profile_1: Wiz_SSID_1
 SSID_profile_2:
 SSID_profile_3:
 SLOT_2_Output_power: 30dBm
 Activate: yes
 WDS_Role: repeater
 WDS_Profile: default
 WDS_uplink: auto
 WDS_Wireless_Bridge: disable
 WDS_Downlink: unlimited
 Band: 5G
 SSID_profile_1_band: 2.4G/5G/6G
 SSID_profile_2_band:
 SSID_profile_3_band:
```

4.10 Change the WiFi Network Name

The following command change the WiFi network name of the default SSID profile to **Zyxel_2F**.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan-ssid-profile default
Router(config-wlan-ssid default)# ssid Zyxel_2F
Router(config-wlan-ssid default)# exit
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show wlan-ssid-profile all
ssid profile: default
Description:
Hide_ssid: no
SSID: Zyxel_2F
```

4.11 Set Up Multiple WiFi Networks in AP Mode

To set up WiFi networks for WiFi clients in AP Mode, you need to first create a **Radio Profile**, **Security Profile**, and **SSID profile**. Each profile is described below.

Table 9 Radio, Security and SSID Profiles

PROFILE NAME	DESCRIPTION
Radio Profile	Determines how the Zyxel Device broadcasts the wireless signal. It defines wireless radio settings such as the frequency bands, channel, channel width, and transmit power. Supported channel widths: • 2.4 GHz: 20 and 40 MHz • 5 GHz: 20, 40, 80, 160, and 240 MHz • 6 GHz: 20, 40, 80, 160, and 320 MHz Possible channel number ranges: • 2.4 GHz channel: 1 ~ 14. • 5 GH channel: 36 ~165. • 6 GHz channel: 1 ~ 233. Note: The channels actually available vary by country and channel width.
Security Profile	Defines the security policy for a WiFi network. It determines data encryption method and whether users must enter a password to connect to the WiFi network.
SSID Profile	Defines the WiFi network (SSID) that users connect to. It defines settings such as the WiFi network (SSID) name, Security Profile, available frequency bands, and bandwidth limits.

This tutorial uses the following scenario:

A small company wants to configure two WiFi networks, one for employees, and one for guests. Follow the steps below to configure the WiFi networks.

Configure the Radio Profile

The 2.4 GHz band provides wider coverage but slower speeds, while the 5 GHz band provides higher speeds but a smaller coverage area. Configure the WiFi networks to broadcast on both bands.

1 The following command creates the **Office_radio_24G** radio profile with the parameters below. In the example below, the command '`band 2.4G band-mode be`' configures the 2.4 GHz band to use 802.11be mode.

Table 10 2.4 GHz WiFi Network Radio Profile

PROFILE NAME	802.11 BAND	802.11 MODE	CHANNEL	CHANNEL WIDTH
Office_radio_24G	2.4 GHz	11be (802.11be)	6	20 MHz

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile Office_radio_24G
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_24G)# activate
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_24G)# band 2.4G band-mode be
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_24G)# 2g-channel 6
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_24G)# ch-width 20
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_24G)#exit
```

2 The following command creates the **Office_radio_5G** radio profile with the parameters below.

Table 11 5 GHz WiFi Network Radio Profile

PROFILE NAME	802.11 BAND	802.11 MODE	CHANNEL	CHANNEL WIDTH
Office_radio_5G	5 GHz	11a (802.11a) 11n (802.11n) 11ac (802.11ac) 11ax (802.11ax) 11be (802.11be)	36	20/40/80 MHz

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile Office_radio_5G
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# activate
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# band 5G band-mode
a          ac         an         anacax     anacaxbe
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# band 5G band-mode anacaxbe
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# 5g-channel 36
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# ch-width
<20, 20/40, 20/40/80, 20/40/80/160, 240, 320>
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# ch-width 20/40/80
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)#exit
```

Configure the Security Profile

In this example, the office does not use a RADIUS server for user authentication.

WPA2-MIX allows both WPA and WPA2 clients to connect to the same WiFi network. Configure two Security Profiles using **wpa2-mix** with **Personal** authentication:

- One for the employee WiFi network
- One for the guest WiFi network

Configure a different pre-shared key for each profile to prevent guests from accessing the employee WiFi network.

3 The following command creates the **Office_security** security profile with the parameters below.

Table 12 Employee Security Profile

PROFILE NAME	SECURITY MODE	PERSONAL PRE-SHARED KEY	IDLE TIMEOUT
Office_security	wpa2-mix	a1357911	3600 seconds

```
Router(config)# wlan-security-profile Office_security
Router(config-wlan-security Office_security)# mode
<none, wep, wpa2, wpa2-mix, wpa3, enhanced-open, dppsk, dppsk-w
Router(config-wlan-security Office_security)# mode wpa2-mix
Router(config-wlan-security Office_security)# wpa-psk
<wpa psk key,length 64>     <wpa psk key,length 8~63>
Router(config-wlan-security Office_security)# wpa-psk a1357911
Router(config-wlan-security Office_security)# idle 3600
Router(config-wlan-security Office_security)# exit
```

4 The following command creates the **Guest_security** security profile with the parameters below.

Table 13 Guest Security Profile

PROFILE NAME	SECURITY MODE	PERSONAL PRE-SHARED KEY	IDLE TIMEOUT
Guest_security	wpa2-mix	b24681012	1800 seconds

```
Router(config)# wlan-security-profile Guest_security
Router(config-wlan-security Guest_security)# mode wpa2-mix
Router(config-wlan-security Guest_security)# wpa-psk
<wpa psk key,length 64>     <wpa psk key,length 8~63>
Router(config-wlan-security Guest_security)# wpa-psk b24681012
Router(config-wlan-security Guest_security)# idle 1800
Router(config-wlan-security Guest_security)# exit
```

Configure the SSID Profile

In this example, the employee WiFi network uses both the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands. The guest WiFi network uses only the 2.4 GHz band. Configure two SSID profiles to broadcast these networks and assign the Security Profiles created in the previous step to each SSID profile.

Note: **SSID** is the WiFi network name that clients see when searching for available WiFi networks.

5 The following command creates the **Office_SSID** SSID profile with the name '**2F_WiFi**'. It makes the assumption that the security profile (Office_security) already exists.

Table 14 Employee SSID Profile

PROFILE NAME	SSID	BAND	SECURITY PROFILE
Office_SSID	2F_WiFi	2.4 GHz, 5 GHz	Office_security

```
Router(config)# wlan-ssid-profile Office_SSID
Router(config-wlan-ssid Office_SSID)# ssid 2F_WiFi
Router(config-wlan-ssid Office_SSID)# band 2.4G 5G
Router(config-wlan-ssid Office_SSID)# security Office_security
Router(config-wlan-ssid Office_SSID)# exit
```

6 The following command creates the **Office_SSID_Guest** SSID profile with the name '**Guest_WiFi**'. It makes the assumption that the security profile (Guest_security) already exists.

Table 15 Guest SSID Profile

PROFILE NAME	SSID	BAND	SECURITY PROFILE
Office_SSID_Guest	Guest_WiFi	2.4 GHz	Guest_security

```
Router(config)# wlan-ssid-profile Office_SSID_Guest
Router(config-wlan-ssid Office_SSID_Guest)# ssid Guest_WiFi
Router(config-wlan-ssid Office_SSID_Guest)# band 2.4G
Router(config-wlan-ssid Office_SSID_Guest)# security Guest_security
Router(config-wlan-ssid Office_SSID_Guest)# exit
```

Configure AP Management

To broadcast the WiFi networks, assign the Radio Profiles and SSID Profiles created in the previous steps to the Zyxel Device.

7 The following command configures Radio 1. Slot 1 refers to radio 1.

Table 16 Configuration for Radio 1

	RADIO OP MODE	RADIO PROFILE	SSID PROFILE
RADIO 1	AP Mode	Office_radio_24G	Office_SSID
			Office_SSID_Guest

```
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ap profile Office_radio_24G
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ssid profile 1 Office_SSID
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ssid profile 2 Office_SSID_Guest
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
```

8 The following command configures Radio 2. Slot 2 refers to radio 2.

Table 17 Configuration for Radio 2

	RADIO OP MODE	RADIO PROFILE	SSID PROFILE
RADIO 2	AP Mode	Office_radio_5G	Office_SSID

```
Router(config)# wlan slot2
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ap profile Office_radio_5G
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ssid profile 1 Office_SSID
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
```

Verify the WiFi Connection

9 The following command displays overall throughput, traffic and signal information. You can use this command to check for abnormal traffic or connection errors. In the screen below, slot 1 refers to the 2.4 GHz radio, and slot 2 refers to the 5 GHz radio.

```
Router(config)# show wireless-hal
current     stalink     station     statistic   wds
Router(config)# show wireless-hal statistic
Slot: 1
  ReceivedPktCount: 0
  TransmittedPktCount: 0
  wlanReceivedByte: 0
  wlanTransmittedByte: 0
  RetryCount: 0
  FCSErrorCount: 0
  TxPower: 27
  Channel Utilization: 76
Slot: 2
  ReceivedPktCount: 0
  TransmittedPktCount: 0
  wlanReceivedByte: 0
  wlanTransmittedByte: 0
  RetryCount: 0
  FCSErrorCount: 0
  TxPower: 27
  Channel Utilization: 39
```

10 If the WiFi connection is up, employees can search for the 2F_WiFi SSID and connect to the employee WiFi network. Guests can search for the Guest_WiFi SSID and connect to the guest WiFi network. When prompted, enter the **Pre-Shared Key** configured in the **Security Profile**.

4.12 Optimize WiFi Settings for Clients

4.12.1 Optimize Channel Selection

Do the following to optimize channel selection:

- Enable Dynamic Channel Selection (DCS)
- Reduce Channel Width in High-Interference Environments

Enable Dynamic Channel Selection (DCS)

Dynamic channel selection (DCS) automatically scans and selects for the channel with the least amount of interference and switches to it when necessary. For more information about DCS, see Dynamic Channel Selection. Configure DCS in one of the following management methods:

- Enable DCS for Each Radio
- Enable DCS for All Radios

Enable DCS for Each Radio

1 Before enabling DCS, check the available channels for the selected frequency band. See View the Available Channels for Each Frequency Band for more details.

2 The following command displays both DFS and non-DFS 5 GHz channels in the 5 GHz band using a 20 MHz channel width.

```
Router(config)# show wlan channels 11A cw 20
Available Channels: FF
No. Channel  string                              Default
=============================================================================
====
1   36       36                                  no
2   40       40                                  no
3   44       44                                  yes
4   48       48                                  no
5   52       52  - (DFS)                         no
6   56       56  - (DFS)                         no
7   60       60  - (DFS)                         no
8   64       64  - (DFS)                         no
9   100      100 - (DFS)                         no
10  104      104 - (DFS)                         no
11  108      108 - (DFS)                         no
12  112      112 - (DFS)                         no
13  116      116 - (DFS)                         no
14  120      120 - (DFS)                         no
15  124      124 - (DFS)                         no
16  128      128 - (DFS)                         no
17  132      132 - (DFS)                         no
18  136      136 - (DFS)                         no
19  140      140 - (DFS)                         no
20  144      144 - (DFS)                         no
21  149      149                                 no
22  153      153                                 no
23  157      157                                 no
24  161      161                                 no
25  165      165                                 no
```

3 The following command configures the Zyxel Device's 5 GHz radio to use channel 48. DCS scanning is enabled with an interval of 720 minutes, and DFS channels are excluded from channel selection.

Table 18 DCS Configuration

BAND	CHANNEL	TIME INTERVAL	DFS CHANNELS
5 GHz	48	720 minutes	Disabled

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile Office_radio_5G
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# dcs time-interval
<10..1440>
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# dcs time-interval 720
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# dcs dcs-5g-method
auto     manual
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# dcs dcs-5g-method manual
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# dcs dfs-aware enable
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# dcs 5g-selected-channel
<Wireless Channel 5G>
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# dcs 5g-selected-channel 48
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# exit
```

When the Zyxel Device is performing a Dynamic Channel Selection (DCS) scan, and selecting a Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) channel (CH52 ~ CH144) for its service channel, the Zyxel Device is currently conducting the Channel Availability Check (CAC). The process wait time is 10 minutes:

- For channels 120~128, the wait time is 10 minutes.
- For other DFS channels, the wait time is 1 minute.

During the process the Zyxel Device LED will blink in blue. When completed, the Zyxel Device LED will change.

Enable DCS for All Radios

The following command allows the Zyxel Device perform DCS on 2.4/5/6 GHz bands immediately.

```
Router(config)# dcs now
Router(config)# exit
```

See Enable DCS for Each Radio for the wait time of the process to complete.

Reduce Channel Width in High-Interference Environments

In high-interference environments, use a narrower channel width to reduce interference and improve overall network performance. The following table shows the recommended channel width for each band in different deployment scenarios:

Table 19 Suggested Channel Width

NUMBER OF ACCESS POINTS	RECOMMENDED CHANNEL WIDTH
Single AP	2.4 GHz: 20 MHz 5 GHz: 80 MHz 6 GHz: 320 MHz
Low-density (2-5 APs)	2.4 GHz: 20 MHz 5 GHz: 80 MHz 6 GHz: 160 MHz
Moderate-density (6-9 APs)	2.4 GHz: 20 MHz 5 GHz: 40 MHz 6 GHz: 160 MHz
High-density (More than 10 APs)	2.4 GHz: 20 MHz 5 GHz: 20 MHz 6 GHz: 80 MHz

The following command configures the Zyxel Devices's 5 GHz radio with the below parameters. Set the channel width according to the Suggested Channel Width table above.

Table 20 5GHz Configuration Radio Profile

BAND	CHANNEL	WIRELESS MODE	CHANNEL WIDTH
5 GHz	48	802.11 a/n/ac/ax/be	20/40/80 MHz

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile Office_radio_5G
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# activate
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# band 5G band-mode anacaxbe
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# 5g-channel 48
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# ch-width
<20, 20/40, 20/40/80, 20/40/80/160, 240, 320>
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# ch-width 20/40/80
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# exit
```

4.12.2 Optimize Transmission Power

Do not set transmission power to the maximum by default as it could cause interference with other Access Points. The transmission power should be set to minimize coverage overlap with neighboring Zyxel Devices while avoiding dead zones. The following table shows the recommended maximum transmission power for different deployment scenarios.

Table 21 Suggested Maximum Transmission Power

NUMBER OF ZYXEL DEVICES	RECOMMENDED MAXIMUM TRANSMISSION POWER
Single AP	2.4 GHz: 30 dBm 5 GHz: 30 dBm 6 GHz: 30 dBm
Low-density (2-5 APs)	2.4 GHz: 20dBm 5 GHz: 30 dBm 6 GHz: 30 dBm
Moderate-density (6-9 APs)	2.4 GHz: 15 dBm 5 GHz: 18 dBm 6 GHz: 21 dBm
High-density (More than 10 APs)	2.4 GHz: 12 dBm 5 GHz: 15 dBm 6 GHz: 18 dBm

Based on the suggested maximum transmission power, reduce the transmit power by 3 to 5 dBm, and then fine-tune it in 2 dBm increments based on your WiFi environment.

For example, if the suggested maximum transmission power is 20 dBm, reduce it to 17 dBm or 15 dBm. If the signal becomes too weak, increase it from 17 dm to 19 dbm, or from 15 dbm to 17 dbm.

The following command configures the Zyxel Devices's 5 GHz radio's transmission power to 30 dBm. For each radio, enter the suggested maximum transmission power from the Suggested Maximum Transmission Power table in **Max Output Power** (0 to 30 dBm). Adjust the value based on your WiFi environment.

```
Router(config)# wlan slot2
Router(config-wlan-slot)# output-power
<0dBm, 1dBm, ... 30dBm>
Router(config-wlan-slot)# output-power 30dBm
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
```

4.12.3 Optimize Roaming

You can do the following to optimize roaming quality:

- Place the Zyxel Device for Strong WiFi Client Signals
- Configure the Disassociate Station Threshold

Place the Zyxel Device for Strong WiFi Client Signals

Place the Zyxel Device based on the WiFi signal strength clients receive. You can check the signal strength of WiFi clients in one of the following management methods:

The following table shows the recommended signal strengths values:

Table 22 Recommended Signal Strength

SIGNAL STRENGTH	DESCRIPTION
greater than or equal to -65 dBm	This is the ideal signal strength throughout the coverage area for a good WiFi signal. For example, -60 dBm is greater than -65 dBm,
less than or equal to -75 dBm	WiFi clients should begin roaming when the signal strength drops to or below this value. For example, -80 dBm is less than -75 dBm.

The following command displays information about the Zyxel Device's WiFi client. In the example below, the WiFi client has a signal strength of -35 dBm. Because -35 dBm is greater than -65 dBm, the WiFi client has a strong signal from the Zyxel Device.

```
Router(config)# show wireless-hal station info
index: 0
  MAC: 12:d9:21:c2:fc:33
  IPv4: 172.22.35.131
  Slot: 2
  SSID: 2F_WiFi
  Security: WPA3-Personal
  TxRate: 960M
  RxRate: 1201M
  RSSI: 100
  RSSI dBm: -35
  Time: 18:50:28 2026/07/17
  VapIdx: 2
  Capability: 802.11ax
  DOT11 features: N/A
  Display SSID: 2F_WiFi
  Band: 5GHz
  MLO: No
```

Configure the Disassociate Station Threshold

Disassociate station threshold allows the Zyxel Device to disconnect WiFi clients with weak signal strength so they can connect to another access point with a stronger signal. The recommended disassociate station threshold is shown below:

Table 23 Recommended Disassociate Station Threshold

SIGNAL STRENGTH	DESCRIPTION
less than or equal to -88 dBm	If a WiFi client's signal strength drops below -88 dBm, the Zyxel Device disconnects the WiFi client so it can reconnect to an AP with a stronger signal. For example, -100 dBm is less than -88 dBm.

Configure the disassociate station threshold to a value from -105 to -20 dBm according to the Recommended Disassociate Station Threshold table. Select **High**, **Standard**, or **Low** for the minimum traffic throughput threshold based on how aggressively you want the Zyxel Device to disconnect WiFi clients with weak signal strength:

Table 24 Disassociate Aggressiveness

LEVEL	DESCRIPTION
High (Most aggressive)	The Zyxel Device disassociates inactive WiFi clients using the shortest inactivity detection interval.
Standard (Moderate)	The Zyxel Device disassociates inactive WiFi clients using the default inactivity detection interval.
Low (Least aggressive)	The Zyxel Device disassociates inactive WiFi clients using the longest inactivity detection interval.

The following command enables the disassociate station threshold and sets the minimum signal threshold to -88 dBm. Time interval for disassociate station threshold check is every 20 seconds. The disassociate aggressiveness is set to low.

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile Office_radio_5G
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# rssi-thres
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# rssi-kickout -88
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# rssi-interval 20
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# rssi-idlechecklvl
<high, low, standard>
Router(config-wlan-radio Office_radio_5G)# rssi-idlechecklvl low
```

The following command displays the overall throughput, traffic and signal information. You can use this command to check if there is any abnormal traffic or connection error.

```
Router(config)# show wireless-hal statistic
Slot: 1
  ReceivedPktCount: 2543
  TransmittedPktCount: 1148
  wlanReceivedByte: 750520
  wlanTransmittedByte: 561202
  RetryCount: 0
  FCSErrorCount: 0
  TxPower: 27
  Channel Utilization: 77
Slot: 2
  ReceivedPktCount: 3285
  TransmittedPktCount: 23758
  wlanReceivedByte: 625813
  wlanTransmittedByte: 16450313
  RetryCount: 0
  FCSErrorCount: 0
  TxPower: 27
  Channel Utilization: 32
```

4.13 Set Multi-Link Operation (MLO) for Smart Mesh

Multi-Link Operation (MLO) allows a WiFi client to connect to the Zyxel Device using multiple frequency bands simultaneously. This increases speed and improves reliability of the WiFi connection. MLO for smart mesh allows a Zyxel Device acting as a MLO repeater to connect to the Zyxel Device acting as a root AP using multiple frequency bands simultaneously. The below examples use the Zyxel Device as the root AP.

4.13.1 Check the Role of the Zyxel Device in Smart Mesh

The following command shows the current role of the root AP (Zyxel Device) in smart mesh.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show smart-mesh state-machine-status
The machine status is ROOT
```

4.13.2 Enable MLO for Smart Mesh

The following command enables smart mesh MLO for the root AP (Zyxel Device).

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# smart-mesh mlo enable
smart-mesh parameter mlo already set
Router(config)# write
```

Note: In firmware version 7.20 and later, MLO is automatically enabled for WiFi networks using the 802.11be radio. As a result, this command doesn't work if your Zyxel Device is running firmware version 7.20 or later.

4.13.3 Select Bands for MLO Uplinks for Smart Mesh

The following command selects the 5 GHz and 6 GHz frequency bands for MLO uplinks in smart mesh. Uplink refers to the Wireless Distribution System (WDS) wireless connection from:

- the repeater to the root AP (Zyxel Device),
- the second repeater to the first repeater,
- the third repeater to the second repeater, and so on.

Note: This feature is only supported on tri-band radio repeater APs. It is not supported on Root APs (Zyxel Device) or dual-band radio devices.

In the below example, `'smart-mesh parameter mlo-link already set'` means that the configured setting has already been applied to the repeater AP.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# smart-mesh mlo-link
<all, 2G/5G, 2G/6G, 5G/6G>
Router(config)# smart-mesh mlo-link 5G/6G
smart-mesh parameter mlo-link already set
Router(config)# write
```

The following command selects all the bands (2.4, 5, and 6 GHz) on the repeater AP for MLO in smart mesh.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# smart-mesh mlo-link all
Router(config)# write
```

If the repeater AP only supports 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz, you do not need to select the bands for MLO in smart mesh.

Attempting to select bands for MLO on such a repeater AP will trigger the error message `'This command option only supports Tri-band and Bandflex APs.'` This message means the command can only be applied to a repeater AP that supports 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, and 6 GHz, or to a BandFlex repeater AP.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# smart-mesh mlo-link 2G/5G
This command option only supports Tri-band and Bandflex APs.
Router(config)# smart-mesh mlo-link 2G/6G
This command option only supports Tri-band and Bandflex APs.
Router(config)# smart-mesh mlo-link 5G/6G
This command option only supports Tri-band and Bandflex APs.
Router(config)# write
```

4.13.4 View the MLO Settings of the MLD

The following command displays the MLO settings of the MLD (Multi-Link Device) for each MLD connection for the root AP (Zyxel Device) in the smart mesh. MLD refers to both the MLO uplinks and downlinks on the 2.4, 5, or 6 GHz (if supported) radios. The MLD ID is a unique identifier assigned to each MLD connection.

In the below example, `MLD ID:9` is assigned by the Zyxel Device to the MLD when the 2.4 GHz interface wds-1-9, 5 GHz interface wds-2-9, and 6 GHz interface wds-3-9 are combined into a single MLD interface. `MLD ID:9, MLD ID:10,` and `MLD ID: 11` are the downlink interfaces of the MLD.

`mld_mac_addr` indicates the MAC address of the single MLD interface after the 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, and 6 GHz interface (if supported) are combined. In the below example,`'6a:d4:e6:17:36:da'` indicates the MAC address of the single MLD interface after the 2.4 GHz interface wds-1-9, 5 GHz interface wds-2-9, and 6 GHz interface wds-3-9 are combined.

`mld_link_macs` are the MAC addresses of each individual interfaces: the 2.4 GHz interface wds-1-9, 5 GHz interface wds-2-9, and 6 GHz interface wds-3-9. In the example below, the `mld_link_macs` value of interface wds-1-9 displays`'6a:d1:e6:17:36:d9'` as the MAC address of the 2.4 GHz interface. `'6a:d2:e6:17:36:da'` is the MAC address of the 5 GHz interface. `'6a:d3:e6:17:36:db'` is the MAC address of the 6 GHz interface.

`mld_link_ids` are the radio identifiers for the MLD connection when the 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, or 6 GHz interfaces are combined into a single MLD interface. In the example below, `mld_link_ids` of wds-1-9 displays '`0 2 1`' showing the three radios are combined.

Table 25 MLD LINK ID

INTERFACE	RADIO	VALUE
2.4 GHz	First Radio	0
5 GHz	Second Radio	1
6 GHz (if supported)	Third Radio	2

If the MLD downlink interface is not part of an MLD connection, it displays '`Not Partner Link`'.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show mlo_info mesh config
[MLD ID: 9]
Interface: wds-1-9
    mld_mac_addr=6a:d4:e6:17:36:da
    mld_link_macs=6a:d1:e6:17:36:d9 6a:d3:e6:17:36:db 6a:d2:e6:17:36:da
    mld_link_ids=0 2 1
 Interface: wds-2-9
    mld_mac_addr=6a:d4:e6:17:36:da
    mld_link_macs=6a:d1:e6:17:36:d9 6a:d3:e6:17:36:db 6a:d2:e6:17:36:da
    mld_link_ids=0 2 1
Interface: wds-3-9
    mld_mac_addr=6a:d4:e6:17:36:da
    mld_link_macs=6a:d1:e6:17:36:d9 6a:d3:e6:17:36:db 6a:d2:e6:17:36:da
    mld_link_ids=0 2 1
[MLD ID: 11]
Interface: pap-1-11
    mld_mac_addr=6a:d4:e6:17:36:dc
    mld_link_macs=6a:d1:e6:17:36:db 6a:d3:e6:17:36:dd 6a:d2:e6:17:36:dc
    mld_link_ids=0 2 1
 Interface: pap-2-11
    mld_mac_addr=6a:d4:e6:17:36:dc
    mld_link_macs=6a:d1:e6:17:36:db 6a:d3:e6:17:36:dd 6a:d2:e6:17:36:dc
    mld_link_ids=0 2 1
Interface: pap-3-11
    mld_mac_addr=6a:d4:e6:17:36:dc
    mld_link_macs=6a:d1:e6:17:36:db 6a:d3:e6:17:36:dd 6a:d2:e6:17:36:dc
    mld_link_ids=0 2 1
```

4.13.5 View the MLO Settings of the Root and Repeater AP

The following command displays the uplink and downlink interfaces for the MLO settings of the root AP (Zyxel Device) and the repeater AP in the smart mesh.

The root AP (Zyxel Device) only displays the downlink interface. Repeaters display both the uplink and downlink interfaces. In the below example, `MLD ID: 9` and `MLD ID: 11` are downlink interfaces of the MLD connection for the root AP (Zyxel Device). MLD ID is a unique identifier assigned to each MLD connection.

`'Slave Interface'` refers to the radios within each MLD. The number of slave interfaces corresponds to the number of radios in one MLD. If the Zyxel Device supports three radios, there will be three slave interfaces under the MLD. In the below example, the Zyxel Device has two slave interfaces, indicating two radios.

`'Permanent HW Addr'` is the MAC address of one of the radios (slave interfaces) in the MLD of the Zyxel Device smart mesh.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show mlo_info mesh interface
[MLD ID: 9]
 Slave Interface: wds-1-9
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d3:e6:17:36:db
 Slave Interface: wds-2-9
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d2:e6:17:36:da
[MLD ID: 11]
 Slave Interface: pap-1-11
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d3:e6:17:36:dd
 Slave Interface: pap-2-11
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d2:e6:17:36:dc
```

Below are additional examples:

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show mlo_info mesh interface
[MLD ID: 9]
 Slave Interface: wds-2-9
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d2:e6:17:36:da
[MLD ID: 11]
 Slave Interface: pap-2-11
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d2:e6:17:36:dc
```

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show mlo_info mesh interface
[MLD ID: 9]
 Slave Interface: wds-1-9
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d3:e6:17:36:db
 Slave Interface: wds-2-9
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d2:e6:17:36:da
 Slave Interface: wds-3-9
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d1:e6:17:36:d9
[MLD ID: 11]
 Slave Interface: pap-1-11
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d3:e6:17:36:dd
 Slave Interface: pap-2-11
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d2:e6:17:36:dc
 Slave Interface: pap-3-11
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d2:e6:17:36:db
[MLD ID: 10]
 Slave Interface: wds-1-10
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d3:e6:17:36:dc
 Slave Interface: wds-2-10
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d2:e6:17:36:db
 Slave Interface: wds-3-10
 Permanent HW addr: 5a:d2:e6:17:36:da
```

4.13.6 View the Traffic of the Repeater AP

The following command displays traffic statistics from the root AP (Zyxel Device) to the repeater APs, or from one repeater to the next in the mesh. The statistics include:

- VAP name
- WDS STA VAP MAC
- Band (2.4 / 5 / 6 GHz)
- TxPkts (Number of packets transmitted)
- RxPkts (Number of packets received)
- TxBytes (Amount of data transmitted in bytes)
- RxBytes. (Amount of data received in bytes)

Note: This command only works on repeater APs.

`VAP` (Virtual Access Point) `Name` refers to the repeater AP's name in the mesh network. On Zyxel Devices that support MLO, a VAP is the interface used for the MLD connection. On Zyxel Devices without MLO support, a VAP is the interface used for a wireless connection.

`WDS STA VAP MAC` refers to the MAC address that the repeater AP uses to connect to the root AP (Zyxel Device).

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show smart-mesh repeater-ap-traffic
Index: 1
 VAP Name: wds-1-10
 WDS STA VAP MAC: 5A:D1:E6:17:36:DA
 Band: 2.4GHz
 TxPkts: 0
 RxPkts: 0
 TxBytes: 0
 RxBytes: 0
Index: 2
 VAP Name: wds-2-10
 WDS STA VAP MAC: 5A:D2:E6:17:36:DB
 Band: 5GHz
 TxPkts: 1316
 RxPkts: 1228
 TxBytes: 532212
 RxBytes: 184830
Index: 3
 VAP Name: wds-3-10
 WDS STA VAP MAC: 5A:D3:E6:17:36:DC
 Band: 6GHz
 TxPkts: 46
 RxPkts: 166
 TxBytes: 16092
 RxBytes: 18978
```

4.13.7 View the Information of the Downlink Devices

The following command displays smart-mesh information from the root AP (Zyxel Device) to the repeater APs, or between repeaters in the smart mesh. Downlink refers to the WDS link from the root AP (Zyxel Device) to the repeater APs.

In the example below, the information includes the downlink AP's:

- MAC address

- MLO Band (either 2.4, 5, or 6 GHz)
- Transmission speed (Tx and Rx rates in Mbps)
- Downlink signal strength in dBm.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show smart-mesh downlink-ap-info
ID: 1
 Downlink MAC: 5A:D1:E6:17:36:DA
 Band: 2.4GHz
 TX Rate: 0M
 RX Rate: 0M
 Downlink Signal Strength: -19
ID: 2
 Downlink MAC: 5A:D1:E6:17:36:DA
 Band: 5GHz
 TX Rate: 1201M
 RX Rate: 1441M
 Downlink Signal Strength: -24
ID: 3
 Downlink MAC: 5A:D1:E6:17:36:DA
 Band: 6GHz
 TX Rate: 5188M
 RX Rate: 2882M
 Downlink Signal Strength: -29
```

4.13.8 View Information on the Smart Mesh

The following command displays information on the smart mesh such as the Ethernet MAC, MLD AP MAC, Mesh Mode, and more.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show smart-mesh mesh-ap-info
Ethernet MAC: 13:36:0E:FB:CC:94
 MLD AP MAC: 19:97:0E:FB:CC:9E
 Mesh Mode: Ethernet
 MLO Mode: enabled
 Wireless Bridge: false
 Auto Detect: true
Band: 2.4GHz
 WDS AP VAP MAC: 19:95:0E:FB:CC:9D
Band: 5GHz
 WDS AP VAP MAC: 19:96:0E:FB:CC:9E
```

4.14 Upgrade the Firmware

Upgrade the firmware for feature enhancements.

4.14.1 View the Current Firmware Version

The following command shows the current firmware version of the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> show version
Zyxel Communications Corp.
model           : NWA90AX PRO
firmware version: V7.00(ACGF.1)
build date      : 2024-07-09 05:15:52
```

4.14.2 Upload the Firmware through FTP

Follow the steps to upload firmware files from your computer to the Zyxel Device.

1. Download the latest firmware for the Zyxel Device from *https://www.zyxel.com/global/en/support/download* and extract the zip file.

2. Open the Windows Command Prompt. Type the commands as shown below, replacing the management IP address, firmware bin file name, and firmware path with your specific details.

   192.168.1.2 is the default IP address of the Zyxel Device. Your computer must be in the same subnet. In this example, **C:\700ACIL2b2.bin** is the path and the firmware you have downloaded.

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
You are user number 1 of 5 allowed.
Local time is now 09:30. Server port: 21.
This is a private system - No anonymous login
IPv6 connections are also welcome on this server.
You will be disconnected after 600 minutes of inactivity.
504 Unknown command
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 User admin OK. Password required
Password:
230 OK. Current restricted directory is /
ftp> bin
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> put C:\700ACIL2b2.bin
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port xxxxx
226-File successfully transferred
226-0.566 seconds (measured here), 109.83 Mbytes per second
226-firmware verifying...
226-firmware updating...
226-Please Wait about 5 minutes!!
226-Do not poweroff or reset,
226-system will reboot automatically after finished updating.
226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 65165517 bytes sent in 0.56Seconds 116993.75Kbytes/sec.
```

4.14.3 Upgrade the Firmware through the Cloud

The following command upgrades your Zyxel Device to the latest firmware version through the clouds server that stores the firmware files.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# cloud-firmware upgrade
Router(config)# write
Router(config)# show version
Zyxel Communications Corp.
model           : NWA90AX PRO
firmware version: V7.00(ACGF.1)
build date      : 2024-07-09 05:15:52
```

4.15 Back Up and Restore the Device Configuration

This section shows how to back up a configuration on the Zyxel Device or your computer first. Then, you can choose a previous backup to restore if the current running configuration has problems.

4.15.1 Back Up Configuration to Your Computer

To download the Zyxel Device's configuration to your computer, open the Windows Command Prompt. Type the commands as shown below, replacing the management IP address and the configuration file name with your specific details.

```
C:\Users>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2
220-You are user number 1 of 5 allowed.
220-Local time is now 19:14. Server port: xx.
220-This is a private system - No anonymous login
220-IPv6 connections are also welcome on this server.
220 You will be disconnected after 600 minutes of inactivity.
504 Unknown command
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 User admin OK. Password required
Password:
230 OK. Current restricted directory is /
ftp> bin
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> cd conf
250 OK. Current directory is /conf
ftp> get startup-config.conf
200 PORT command successful
150-Connecting to port 56904
150 6.8 kbytes to download
226-File successfully transferred
226 0.000 seconds (measured here), 36.90 Mbytes per second
ftp: 6918 bytes received in 0.00Seconds 6918000.00Kbytes/sec.
```

4.15.2 Restore Configuration from Your Computer

To upload a previously-saved configuration from your computer to the Zyxel Device, open the Windows Command Prompt. Type the commands as shown below, replacing the management IP address and the configuration file name with your specific details.

```
C:\Users>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
220-You are user number 1 of 5 allowed.
220-Local time is now 20:14. Server port: xx.
220-This is a private system - No anonymous login
220-IPv6 connections are also welcome on this server.
220 You will be disconnected after 600 minutes of inactivity.
504 Unknown command
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 User admin OK. Password required
Password:
230 OK. Current restricted directory is /
ftp> cd conf
250 OK. Current directory is /conf
ftp> bin
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> put startup-config.conf
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port 58471
226-File successfully transferred
226-0.004 seconds (measured here), 1.58 Mbytes per second
226 Post action ok!!
ftp: 6918 bytes sent in 0.00Seconds 6918000.00Kbytes/sec.
```

4.15.3 Back Up Configuration to Your Zyxel Device

The following command copies the Zyxel Device's current configuration, renames it **running-config_20240720.conf**, and saves it in the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# copy running-config /conf/running-config_20240720.conf
Router(config)# write
```

4.15.4 Restore Configuration from Your Zyxel Device

The following command applies the previously copied configuration file **running-config_20240720.conf** to your Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# apply running-config /conf/running-config_20240720.conf
ignore error rollback
Router(config)# write
```

4.16 Commands for Troubleshooting

The following are some commands for troubleshooting.

4.16.1 View Logs

Logs display event details on the Zyxel Device. The following command displays logs.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# show logging entries
================================================================================
1    2024-07-29 14:09:03
     error               system                System
     NTP update failed.
```

4.16.2 Reboot the Zyxel Device

You can reboot the Zyxel Device if the Zyxel Device is unstable, the Internet connection is slow or intermittent. The following command reboots the Zyxel Device.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# reboot
% EnterpriseWLAN is going to reboot!
```

4.16.3 Collect Diagnostic Information

The diagnostics feature provides an easy way for you to generate a file containing the Zyxel Device's configuration and diagnostic information. You may need to generate this file and send it to customer support during troubleshooting.

The following command collects diagnostics information.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# diaginfo collect wtp
zysudo uid=0,euid=0
Please wait, collecting information
Router(config)# show diaginfo collect wtp status
Status: Done
Filename: diaginfo-2026-06-25_05-03-38.tar.bz2
```

The file name, 'diaginfo-2026-06-25_05-03-38.tar.bz2', indicates that the file was downloaded at 05:03:38 on June 25, 2026. To view the diagnostic information:

1. Extract the '.tar.bz2' file using 7-Zip or another extraction tool. The extracted file, diaginfo-2026-06-25_05-03-38.tar, appears. Repeat the previous step to extract this file.
2. Open the **debug** folder. The **debug** folder contains raw diagnostic data organized by the Zyxel Device's main features and includes the following:
   - **diag_zysh_aaa**: Authentication and authorization information, including IEEE 802.1X, RADIUS, and authentication logs.

- **diag_zysh_capwap**: CAPWAP information for AP management by a wireless controller.
- **diag_zysh_cc**: Nebula Control Center (NCC) connection and cloud management information.
- **diag_zysh_customized**: Diagnostic information collected using a user-defined script that specifies additional diagnostic commands.
- **diag_zysh_interface**: Network interface configuration and status, including IP addresses and interface statistics.
- **diag_zysh_logs**: System and application log files.
- **diag_zysh_misc**: Miscellaneous diagnostic information.
- **diag_zysh_networking**: Network configuration and status, including routing, DNS, DHCP, and connectivity information.
- **diag_zysh_smart_mesh**: Smart Mesh (WDS) configuration and mesh connection status.
- **diag_zysh_system**: System information, including firmware, CPU, memory, storage, and running processes.
- **diag_zysh_wireless**: Wireless configuration and status, including radio settings, channels, SSIDs, clients, and signal information.

Click **diag_brief.txt** to view a summary of the diagnostic information. This text file provides an overview of the Zyxel Device's system status, including CPU and memory usage, running processes, cloud connection status, and a summary of detected errors for quick troubleshooting.

```
Mem: 474592K used, 408608K free, 21760K shrd, 11928K buff, 94196K cached
CPU:  0.0% usr  2.3% sys  0.0% nic 95.3% idle  0.0% io  0.0% irq  2.3% sirq
Load average: 2.85 2.36 2.20 3/275 11493
  PID  PPID USER     STAT   VSZ %VSZ CPU %CPU COMMAND
17288 17278 root     S<   56612  6.3   3  0.0 /usr/bin/netopeer-server
 7391  7383 root     S    20232  2.2   3  0.0 /bin/zyshd
20498     1 root     S    19264  2.1   0  0.0 /usr/sbin/radiusd -t -d /var/
zyxel/raddb/
 4819     1 root     S    14752  1.6   3  0.0 hostapd -g /var/run/hostapd/
global -B -P /var/run/hostapd-global.pid -f /tmp/hostapd-global.log
 4829     1 root     S    14028  1.5   3  0.0 wpa_supplicant -g /var/run/
wpa_supplicant/global -B -P /var/run/wpa_supplicant-global.pid -f /tmp/ws-
global.log
 9127     1 root     S    12000  1.3   1  0.0 /usr/sbin/smart_mesh
\n
  MEM REPORT:
_____________________________________________________
  MEM LEAK CHECK:
_____________________________________________________
  [OK] No memory leak dump files found.
  NEBULA REPORT:
  NEBULA CLOUD STATUS:
_____________________________________________________
  [OK] successfully connected to the Nebula.
  NEBULA INTERNET STATUS:
_____________________________________________________
  [OK] This access point is connected to the Internet.
  AAA REPORT:
radius server IP/port

[CAPWAP]
  CAPWAP Ping Test:
    Ping total:    N/A
    Ping Time stamps: N/A
  CAPWAP Lost Echo Ping Test:
    Ping total:    N/A
    Ping Time stamps: N/A
  CAPWAP Not RUN state:
    Total:         N/A
    Windows:       N/A

[Smart Mesh Check]
  smart_mesh_dbg_log (ERROR lines):
    [Wed Jun 24 02:26:59 2026] is_nap_registed:825 : (ERROR) No child process
    [Wed Jun 24 02:26:59 2026] check_site_id_file:1227 : (ERROR) /etc/zyxel/
ftp/smart_mesh/site_id file doesn't exist.
    [Wed Jun 24 02:26:59 2026] is_nap_registed:825 : (ERROR) No such file or
directory
    [Wed Jun 24 02:27:11 2026] is_nap_registed:825 : (ERROR) No such file or
directory
    [Wed Jun 24 02:27:11 2026] is_nap_registed:825 : (ERROR) No such file or
directory
```

4.16.4 Configure NCC Discovery

The Zyxel Device will try to discover the NCC and go into Cloud Managed mode when it is connected to the Internet and NCC, and the Zyxel Device has been registered with the NCC.

The following command turns on NCC discovery.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# no netconf inactivate
Router(config)# show nebula cloud status
Zyxel Cloud: This access point is connected to the Nebula.
```

4.16.5 Test Network Throughput

An iPerf server is a machine running the network testing tool iPerf in server mode so other devices can test network performance against it. Run an iPerf test to measure network performance such as bandwidth and throughput between an iPerf client, the Zyxel Device, and an iPerf server.

Table 26 Supported iPerf Version

Supported iPerf version	iPerf3

In the following command, the device at <W.X.Y.Z> is the iPerf server. This command sends traffic from the client to the iPerf server to measure network performance.

```
Router> configure terminal
Router(config)# iperf client ip <W.X.Y.Z> parallel-stream <parallel> time
<timesec> protocol {udp|tcp} bandwidth <band> reverse-mode {enable|disable}
port <port> hours <hours,0~23> minutes <minutes,0~59>
```

Table 27 Command Parameters

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
`ip <W.X.Y.Z>`	Specifies the IP address of the remote iPerf server that the Zyxel Device connects to.
`parallel-stream <parallel>`	Sets the number of parallel data streams. Enter a number between 1 to 32. Recommended value: 20.
`time <timesec>`	Specifies the test duration in seconds. Enter a number between 1 to 999. Recommended duration: 20 seconds.
`protocol {udp|tcp}`	Sets the protocol to UDP or TCP. Use TCP if you want to measure general performance and throughput. Use UDP if you want to test packet loss, jitter, or link capacity under heavy load.
`bandwidth <band>`	Sets the transmission bandwidth. The recommended value depends on the expected link capacity. • 10 to 50 Mbps: For basic capacity links or initial testing • 100 to 300 Mbps: For typical WiFi 5 environment • 500 Mbps to 1 Gbps: For high-performance WiFi 6 environment
`reverse-mode {enable|disable}`	Reverses the traffic direction. • **disable**: Zyxel Device sends traffic to the iPerf server. • **enable**: iPerf server sends traffic to the Zyxel Device.
`port <port>`	Specifies the UDP or TCP port number. The default port is 5201.

Table 27 Command Parameters

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
`hours <hours, 0-23>`	Specifies the system hour when the test starts. For example, `hours 5 minutes 0` schedules the test to start at 05:00 system time.
`minutes <minutes, 0-59>`	Specifies the system minute when the test starts. For example, `hours 5 minutes 15` schedules the test to start at 05:15 system time.

Use the following command to verify that the test is successfully scheduled.

```
Router(config)# show iperf status
Status: SCHEDULE
Throughput: 856.42 Mbits/sec
Schedule: Enable
Hours: 10
Minutes: 08
```

The following table describes the meaning of each status.

Table 28 Status Description

STATUS	DESCRIPTION
SCHEDULE	The iPerf test is scheduled, but not yet performed.
INPROGRESS	The iPerf test is running.
FAIL	The iPerf test failed.
SUCCESS	The iPerf test is successful.

Part II
Reference

CHAPTER 5
Status

This chapter explains some commands you can use to display information about the Zyxel Device's current operational state.

Table 29 Status Show Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show boot status`	Displays details about the Zyxel Device's startup state.
`show cpu status`	Displays the CPU utilization.
`show cpu all`	Displays the CPU utilization of each CPU.
`show disk`	Displays the disk utilization.
`show extension-slot`	Displays the status of the extension card slot and the USB ports and the names of any connected devices.
`show led status`	Displays the status of each LED on the Zyxel Device.
`show mac`	Displays the Zyxel Device's MAC address.
`show mem status`	Displays what percentage of the Zyxel Device's memory is currently being used.
`show ram-size`	Displays the size of the Zyxel Device's on-board RAM.
`show serial-number`	Displays the serial number of this Zyxel Device.
`show socket listen`	Displays the Zyxel Device's listening ports
`show socket open`	Displays the ports that are open on the Zyxel Device.
`show system uptime`	Displays how long the Zyxel Device has been running since it last restarted or was turned on.
`show version`	Displays the Zyxel Device's model, firmware and build information.

Here are examples of the commands that display the CPU and disk utilization.

Use `show cpu all` to check all the Zyxel Device CPU utilization. Use `show cpu status` to check the Zyxel Device average CPU utilization. You can use these commands to check your cpu status if you feel the Zyxel Device's performance is becoming slower

Use `show disk` to check the percentage of Zyxel Device onboard flash memory that is currently being used. You can use this command to check your disk status if you're having trouble saving files on the

Zyxel Device, such as the firmware or the packet capture files.

```
Router> show cpu status
CPU utilization: 7 %
CPU utilization for 1 min: 7 %
CPU utilization for 5 min: 7 %
Router> show cpu all
CPU core 0 utilization: 4 %
CPU core 0 utilization for 1 min: 6 %
CPU core 0 utilization for 5 min: 6 %
CPU core 1 utilization: 12 %
CPU core 1 utilization for 1 min: 14 %
CPU core 1 utilization for 5 min: 13 %
Router> show disk
No. Disk                Size(MB)        Usage
================================================================================
1   onboard flash       3               15%
```

Here are examples of the commands that display the MAC address, memory usage, RAM size, and serial number. You need the MAC address and serial number if you want to pass the Zyxel Device management to Nebula.

```
Router(config)# show mac
MAC address: 12:34:56:78:90:16-40:4A:03:42:70:17
Router(config)# show mem status
memory usage: 19%
Router(config)# show ram-size
ram size: 256MB
Router(config)# show serial-number
serial number: XXXXXXXXXXXXX
```

Here is an example of the command that displays the listening ports.

```
Router(config)# show socket listen
No.   Proto Local_Address         Foreign_Address       State
================================================================================
1     tcp   0.0.0.0:80            0.0.0.0:0             LISTEN
2     tcp   192.168.1.245:53      0.0.0.0:0             LISTEN
3     tcp   127.0.0.1:53          0.0.0.0:0             LISTEN
4     tcp   0.0.0.0:21            0.0.0.0:0             LISTEN
5     tcp   0.0.0.0:22            0.0.0.0:0             LISTEN
6     tcp   127.0.0.1:953         0.0.0.0:0             LISTEN
```

Here is an example of the command that displays the open ports.

```
Router(config)# show socket open
No.   Proto Local_Address         Foreign_Address       State
================================================================================
1     udp   0.0.0.0:1812          0.0.0.0:0
2     udp   0.0.0.0:1814          0.0.0.0:0
3     udp   0.0.0.0:161           0.0.0.0:0
4     udp   172.23.26.245:53      0.0.0.0:0
5     0.0.1:53          0.0.0.0:0
6     udp   0.0.0.0:43386         0.0.0.0:0
7     udp   0.0.0.0:5246          0.0.0.0:0
```

Here are examples of the commands that display the system uptime and model, firmware, and build information.

```
Router> show system uptime
system uptime: 04:18:00
Router> show version
Zyxel Communications Corp.
model           : WAX650S
firmware version: 6.55(ABRM.0)b2
BM version      : 1.13
build date      : 2023-03-21 09:10:11
```

This example shows the current LED states on the Zyxel Device. The **SYS** LED lights on and green.

```
Router> show led status
sys: green
Router>
```

CHAPTER 6
Object Reference

This chapter describes how to use object reference commands.

6.1 Object Reference Commands

The object reference commands are used to see which configuration settings reference a specific object. You can use this table when you want to delete an object because you have to remove references to the object first.

Table 30 `show reference` Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show reference object username [username]`	Displays which configuration settings reference the specified user object.
`show reference object aaa authentication [default | profile]`	Displays which configuration settings reference the specified AAA authentication object.
`show reference object ca category {local|remote} [cert_name]`	Displays which configuration settings reference the specified authentication method object.
`show reference object [wlan-radio-profile]`	Displays the specified radio profile object.
`show reference object [wlan-ssid-profile]`	Displays the specified SSID profile object.
`show reference object [wlan-security-profile]`	Displays the specified security profile object.
`show reference object [wlan-macfilter-profile]`	Displays the specified MAC filter profile object.

6.1.1 Object Reference Command Example

This example shows the names of the WLAN profiles and which security profile each is set to use.

```
Router(config)# show reference object aaa authentication

default References:
Category
Rule Priority        Rule Name
Description
================================================================================
WLAN Profile SECURITY
1                    default
N/A
WWW
N/A                  N/A
N/A
```

CHAPTER 7
Interfaces

This chapter shows you how to use interface-related commands.

7.1 Interface Overview

In general, an interface has the following characteristics.

- An interface is a logical entity through which (layer-3) packets pass.
- An interface is bound to a physical port or another interface.
- Many interfaces can share the same physical port.

Some characteristics do not apply to some types of interfaces.

7.2 Interface General Commands Summary

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 31 Input Values for General Interface Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
interface_name	The name of the interface. Ethernet interface: ge*x*, *x* = 1 - N, where N equals the highest numbered Ethernet interface for your Zyxel Device model. VLAN interface: vlan*x*, *x* = 0 - 511
domain_name	Fully-qualified domain name. You may up to 254 alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), or periods (.), but the first character cannot be a period.

The following sections introduce commands that are supported by several types of interfaces.

7.2.1 Basic Interface Properties and IP Address Commands

This table lists basic properties and IP address commands.

Table 32 interface General Commands: Basic Properties and IP Address Assignment

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`capwap ap vlan vlan-id <1..4094> <tag|untag>`	When the Zyxel Device is in managed AP mode, this sets the AP's VLAN identification number and sets it to send tagged or untagged packets.
`interface-name {bridge_interface} user_defined_name`	Specifies a name for a bridge interface. It can use alphanumeric characters, hyphens, and underscores, and it can be up to 11 characters long. *ethernet_interface*: This must be the system name of a bridge interface. Use the `show interface-name` command to see the system name of interfaces. *user_defined_name*: • This name cannot be one of the follows: "ethernet", "ppp", "vlan", "bridge", "virtual", "wlan", "cellular", "aux", "tunnel", "status", "summary", "all" • This name cannot begin with one of the follows either: "ge", "ppp", "vlan", "wlan-", "br", "cellular", "aux", "tunnel".
`interface-rename old_user_defined_name new_user_defined_name`	Modifies the user-defined name of an Ethernet interface.
`interface send statistics interval <15..3600>`	Sets how often the Zyxel Device sends interface statistics to external servers. For example, a syslog server.
`[no] interface interface_name`	Creates the specified interface if necessary and enters sub-command mode. The `no` command deletes the specified interface.
`[no] description description`	Specifies the description for the specified interface. The `no` command clears the description. *description*: You can use alphanumeric and `()+/:=?!*#@$_%-` characters, and it can be up to 60 characters long.
`[no] downstream <0..1048576>`	This is reserved for future use. Specifies the downstream bandwidth for the specified interface. The `no` command sets the downstream bandwidth to 1048576.
`exit`	Leaves the sub-command mode.
`[no] ip address dhcp`	Makes the specified interface a DHCP client; the DHCP server gives the specified interface its IP address, subnet mask, and gateway. The `no` command makes the IP address static IP address for the specified interface. (See the next command to set this IP address.)
`[no] ip address ip subnet_mask`	Assigns the specified IP address and subnet mask to the specified interface. The `no` command clears the IP address and the subnet mask.

Table 32 interface General Commands: Basic Properties and IP Address Assignment (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] ip gateway ip`	Adds the specified gateway using the specified interface. The no command removes the gateway.
`ip gateway ip metric <0..15>`	Sets the priority (relative to every gateway on every interface) for the specified gateway. The lower the number, the higher the priority.
`[no] metric <0..15>`	Sets the interface's priority relative to other interfaces. The lower the number, the higher the priority.
`[no] mss <536..1460>`	Specifies the maximum segment size (MSS) the interface is to use. MSS is the largest amount of data, specified in bytes, that the interface can handle in a single, unfragmented piece. The no command has the interface use its default MSS.
`[no] mtu <576..1500>`	Specifies the Maximum Transmission Unit, which is the maximum number of bytes in each packet moving through this interface. The Zyxel Device divides larger packets into smaller fragments. The no command resets the MTU to 1500.
`[no] shutdown`	Deactivates the specified interface. The no command activates it.
`traffic-prioritize {tcp-ack|dns} bandwidth <0..1048576> priority <1..7> {maximize-bandwidth-usage};`	Applies traffic priority when the interface sends TCP-ACK traffic, or traffic for resolving domain names. It also sets how much bandwidth the traffic can use and can turn on maximize bandwidth usage.
`traffic-prioritize {tcp-ack | dns} deactivate`	Turns off traffic priority settings for when the interface sends the specified type of traffic.
`[no] upstream <0..1048576>`	Specifies the upstream bandwidth for the specified interface. The no command sets the upstream bandwidth to 1048576.
`manager ap vlan vlan-id <1..4094> {tag | untag}`	When the Zyxel Device is in standalone or Cloud Managed mode, this tags or untags the outgoing traffic with the VLAN identification number.
`manager ap vlan ip address {ipv4_address subnet_mask | dhcp}`	Sets the management IPv4 address for the Zyxel Device.
`manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 address ipv6_address/prefix`	Sets the IPv6 address and the prefix length for the LAN interface of the Zyxel Device. The no command removes the IPv6 address settings.
`manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6 {address-request | client}`	Set the Zyxel Device to act as a DHCPv6 client or get this interface's IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server. The no command sets the Zyxel Device to not get this interface's IPv6 address from the DHCPv6 server.
`manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6-request-object dhcp6_profile`	For a DHCPv6 client interface, sets the profile of DHCPv6 request settings that determine what additional information to get from the DHCPv6 server. The no command removes the DHCPv6 request settings profile.

Table 32 interface General Commands: Basic Properties and IP Address Assignment (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 enable`	Enables IPv6 stateless auto-configuration on the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device will generate an IPv6 address itself from a prefix obtained from an IPv6 router in the network. The no command disables IPv6 stateless auto-configuration.
`manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 gateway ipv6_address`	Sets the IPv6 address of the default outgoing gateway. The no command removes the IPv6 gateway settings.
`manager ap vlan [no] ipv6 nd ra accept`	Sets the IPv6 interface to accept IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement messages. The no command sets the IPv6 interface to discard IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement messages.
`manager ap vlan [no] ip gateway ipv4_address`	Sets the manager gateway address. The no command removes the gateway.
`manager ap vlan ip dns ipv4_address`	Specifies a static DNS server IP address for the Zyxel Device.
`manager ap vlan no ip dns`	Removes the static DNS server IP address for the Zyxel Device. If you use this command, the Zyxel Device will use the DNS server IP address according to the Zyxel Device's current IP type: • If the Zyxel Device is using a DHCP-assigned IP address, the Zyxel Device will use the DNS server IP address assigned by the DHCP server. • If the Zyxel Device is using a static IP address, the Zyxel Device will not have a DNS server IP address.
`show interface {ethernet | vlan} status`	Displays the connection status of the specified type of interfaces.
`show interface {interface_name | ethernet | vlan | bridge | all}`	Displays information about the specified interface, specified type of interfaces, or all interfaces.
`show interface send statistics interval`	Displays the interval for how often the Zyxel Device refreshes the sent packet statistics for the interfaces.
`show interface summary all`	Displays basic information about the interfaces.
`show interface summary all status`	Displays the connection status of the interfaces.
`show interface-name`	Displays all Ethernet interface system name and user-defined name mappings.
`show ipv6 interface {interface_name | ethernet | vlan | bridge | all}`	Displays information about the specified IPv6 interface, specified type of IPv6 interfaces, or all IPv6 interfaces.
`show ipv6 nd ra status interface_name`	Displays the specified IPv6 interface's IPv6 router advertisement configuration.
`show ipv6 static address interface interface_name`	Displays the static IPv6 addresses configured on the specified IPv6 interface.

7.2.1.1 Basic Interface Properties Command Examples

Use these commands to set LAN settings. Use **manager ap vlan ip address** to set the LAN interface to use a static IP address or DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol). If you set an attribute twice, the latter setting overrides the previous one.

The following example shows how to check the Internet interface status, including the current IP address used.

```
Router(config)# show interface all
No. Name        Status        IP Address      Mask            IP Assignment
================================================================================
2   lan         Up            123.45.67.89    255.255.252.0   DHCP client
3   wlan-1      n/a           n/a             n/a             n/a
4   wlan-1-1    Up            0.0.0.0         0.0.0.0         static
5   wlan-1-2    Up            0.0.0.0         0.0.0.0         static
```

The following commands configure the LAN Ethernet interface to use IP address 1.1.1.1, netmask 255.255.255.0, and gateway address 1.2.3.4.

```
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip gateway 1.2.3.4
```

The following command makes the LAN Ethernet interface a DHCP client. A DHCP client (your Zyxel Device) uses the IP address dynamically assigned by a DHCP server. Use this command to have the LAN Ethernet interface use a dynamic IP address.

```
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip address dhcp
```

The following command sets the Zyxel Device to use a static DNS server IP address. This is useful when the DNS server assigned by the DHCP server cannot resolve to specific domain names and you want to set the Zyxel Device to use another DNS server. For example, the Zyxel Device needs the NTP server and NCC server (d.nebula.zyxel.com/s.nebula.zyxel.com) IP addresses to connect to the NCC and go to cloud mode. Set the Zyxel Device to use the Google DNS server IP address 8.8.8.8.

```
Router(config)# manager ap vlan ip dns 8.8.8.8
```

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. You can assign a VLAN Id for the Zyxel Device to be the management VLAN Id. The Zyxel Device only handles packets from the Ethernet port tagged with the same VLAN ID (management VLAN Id). Specify `untag` if you want the Zyxel Device to send outgoing packets tagged with VLAN Id through the Ethernet port.

This example sets the LAN Ethernet interface's management VLAN Id to 100, untagged.

Note: Mis-configuring the management VLAN settings in your Zyxel Device can make it inaccessible. If this happens, you'll have to reset the Zyxel Device.

```
Router(config)# manager ap vlan vlan-id 100 untag
```

7.3 Port Commands

This section covers commands that are specific to ports.

Note: In CLI, representative interfaces are also called representative ports.

Table 33 Basic Interface Setting Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`no port <1..x>`	Removes the specified physical port from its current representative interface and adds it to its default representative interface (for example, port *x* --> ge*x*).
`port status port_name`	Enters a sub-command mode to configure the specified port's settings. *port_name*: The name of the Ethernet port. UPLINK, or lanx, x = 1-N, where N equals the highest numbered Ethernet LAN interface for your Zyxel Device model.
`[no] duplex <full | half>`	Sets the port's duplex mode. The no command returns the default setting.
`exit`	Leaves the sub-command mode.
`[no] negotiation auto`	Sets the port to use auto-negotiation to determine the port speed and duplex. The no command turns off auto-negotiation.
`[no] speed <10, 100, 1000, 2500, 5000, 10000>`	Sets the Ethernet port's connection speed in Mbps. The no command returns the default setting. Not all Zyxel Device models support the 2500, 5000, 10000 Mbps connection speeds. See the product specification of your Zyxel Device for the supported connection speed.
`show port setting`	Displays the Ethernet port negotiation, duplex, and speed settings.
`show port status`	Displays statistics for the Ethernet ports.
`show port type`	Displays the type of cable connection for each physical interface on the device.
`show manager vlan`	Displays the LAN interface's management interface settings.

7.3.1 Port Command Examples

The following example shows port status.

```
Router# show port status
Port Status     TxPkts     RxPkts     TxBcast    RxBcast    Colli.  TxB/s
RxB/s      Up Time      PVID
================================================================================
====
1    1000M/Full 465        5452       411        2647       0       812
612        00:13:28     1
2    Down      0         0         0         0         0      0         0
00:00:00     1
3    Down      0         0         0         0         0      0         0
00:00:00     1
4    Down      0         0         0         0         0      0         0
00:00:00     1
Router#
```

The following example shows port settings.

```
Router(config)# show port setting
Port Negotiation Duplex Speed EEE
================================================================================
====
1    auto        full   1000  no
```

The following example shows LAN settings.

```
Router(config)# show manager vlan
Management Interface:
        VLAN ID: 100
        VLAN Tag: untag
        IP Status: static
        IP Address: 192.168.1.2
        Mask: 255.255.255.0
        Gateway: 0.0.0.0
```

The following example shows each port's type of cable connection.

```
Router(config)# show port type
Port Type
================================================================================
1    Copper
```

CHAPTER 8
Storm Control

This chapter shows you how to configure the traffic storm control settings on the Zyxel Device. Check the feature comparison table in Section 1.2 on page 13 to see if your Zyxel Device model supports the Storm Control feature.

8.1 Overview

Traffic storm control limits the number of broadcast and/or multicast packets the Zyxel Device receives on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast and/or multicast packets is reached, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast and/or multicast packets in your network.

8.2 Storm Control Commands

The following table describes the commands available for storm control. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 34 Command Summary: Storm Control

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`storm-control ethernet`	Enters a sub-command mode to configure the Zyxel Device's storm control settings.
`[no] broadcast`	Enables or disables broadcast storm control, which drops broadcast packets from ingress traffic if the traffic rate exceeds the configured maximum rate.
`broadcast pps <1..10000>`	Sets the maximum rate for broadcast traffic before storm control starts dropping broadcast packets.
`[no] multicast`	Enables or disables multicast storm control, which drops multicast packets from ingress traffic if the traffic rate exceeds the configured maximum rate.
`multicast pps <1..10000>`	Sets the maximum rate for multicast traffic before storm control starts dropping multicast packets.
`no storm-control ethernet`	Disables broadcast/multicast storm control on the Zyxel Device.
`show storm-control ethernet`	Displays storm control settings on all Zyxel Device ports.
`show storm-control` *`port_name`*	Displays storm control settings on the specified port. *`port_name`*: The name of the Ethernet port. `UPLINK` or `lanx`, x = 1-N, where N equals the highest numbered Ethernet LAN interface for your Zyxel Device model.

8.2.1 Storm Control Command Examples

The following example shows you how to enable broadcast storm control on the Zyxel Device.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# storm-control ethernet
Router(storm-control)# broadcast
Router(storm-control)# exit
Router(config)#
```

The following example shows you how to display the uplink port's storm control settings. The way data is displayed may vary slightly for different models.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show storm-control UPLINK
Port: UPLINK
 Storm Type 1: Multicast
  Storm Suppression: Disable
 Storm Type 2: Broadcast
  Storm Suppression: Enable
 Rate Type: pps
 Rate: 100
 Storming: No
 Last Suppression Time: N/A
 Last Recovery Time: N/A
Router(config)#
```

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show storm-control UPLINK
Port: UPLINK
 Storm Type 1: Multicast
  Storm Suppression: Disable
  Rate Type: pps
  Rate: 100
  Storming: N/A
  Last Suppression Time: N/A
  Last Recovery Time: N/A
 Storm Type 2: Broadcast
  Storm Suppression: Enable
  Rate Type: pps
  Rate: 100
  Storming: No
  Last Suppression Time: N/A
  Last Recovery Time: N/A
Router(config)#
```

CHAPTER 9
NCC Discovery

This chapter shows you how to configure the NCC discovery and proxy server settings on the Zyxel Device.

9.1 Overview

If your Zyxel Device can be managed through the Zyxel Nebula Control Center (NCC) and is behind a proxy server, you will need to enable NCC discovery and configure the proxy server settings so that the Zyxel Device can access the NCC through the proxy server.

9.2 NCC Discovery Commands

The following table describes the commands available for NCC discovery and proxy server. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 35 Command Summary: NCC Discovery

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] netconf inactivate`	Turns off NCC discovery on the Zyxel Device. If NCC discovery is disabled, the Zyxel Device will not discover the NCC and remain in standalone AP mode. The no command turns on NCC discovery. The Zyxel Device will try to discover the NCC and go into Cloud Managed mode when it is connected to the Internet and NCC, and has been registered in the NCC.
`[no] netconf proxy`	Sets the Zyxel Device to access the NCC through the specified proxy server. The no command sets the Zyxel Device to not access the NCC through the specified proxy server.
`netconf proxy server {`*`ip`*`|`*`host_name`*`}`	Sets the IP address or URL of the proxy server.
`netconf proxy port <1..65535>`	Sets the service port number used by the proxy server.
`[no] netconf proxy-auth`	Turns on proxy authentication. The no command turns it off. Enable this if the proxy server requires authentication before it grants access to the Internet.
`netconf proxy-auth username` *`username`* `{password|encrypted-password}` {*`password`*`|`*`ciphertext`*`}	Sets your proxy user name and password.

Table 35 Command Summary: NCC Discovery (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show netconf proxy status`	Displays the proxy server settings.
`show netconf status`	Displays whether NCC discovery is enabled or not on the Zyxel Device.
`show nebula ntp status`	Displays the Internet connection status, NTP update status and fail messages if the connection fails.
`show nebula cloud status`	Displays the Zyxel Device's connection status with NCC and fail messages if the connection fails.
`show nebula claim status`	Displays the Zyxel Device's registration status on NCC and fail messages if the connection fails.

9.2.1 NCC Discovery Command Example

The Zyxel Device will go to Cloud Managed mode when it is connected to the Internet and NCC. Make sure you've registered your Zyxel Device on NCC.

The following example shows you how to enable NCC discovery and check the Zyxel Device NCC status.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# no netconf inactivate
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show nebula ntp status
Nebula NTP status : success
Nebula NTP reason : NTP update succeeded
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show nebula cloud status
Nebula Cloud status : success
Nebula Cloud reason : The device is connected to Nebula
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show nebula claim status
Nebula Claim status : fail
Nebula Claim reason : Not registered yet, next try in 1495 seconds
```

The following example shows proxy server settings.

```
Router> show netconf proxy status
        active: yes
        proxy server: 172.16.15.253
        proxy port: 8080
        proxy-auth active: yes
        proxy-auth username: Joseph
        proxy-auth encrypted-password: $4$hT65kQTR$Uh8lp5zfcP7vEfm
O97C5MJ6U1B47M3DIiPvb6GcrPK2kEo3R7PTChiVWl7rRi+xr0xhg8DsdTPU$
Router>
```

CHAPTER 10
Users

This chapter describes how to set up user accounts and user settings for the Zyxel Device. You can also set up rules that control when users have to log in to the Zyxel Device before the Zyxel Device routes traffic for them.

10.1 User Account Overview

A user account defines the privileges of a user logged into the Zyxel Device. User accounts are used in firewall rules and application patrol, in addition to controlling access to configuration and services in the Zyxel Device.

10.1.1 User Types

These are the types of user accounts the Zyxel Device uses.

Table 36 Types of User Accounts

TYPE	ABILITIES	LOGIN METHOD(S)
Admin Users		
admin	Modify Zyxel Device configuration (web, CLI)	WWW, SSH, FTP, Console,
limited-admin	Verify Zyxel Device configuration (web, CLI) Perform basic diagnostics (CLI)	WWW, SSH, Console
Access Users		
user	Used for the embedded RADIUS server and SNMPv3 user access Browse user-mode commands (CLI)	

10.2 User Commands Summary

The following table identify the values required for many `username` commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 37 user Command Input Values

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
username	The name of the user (account). You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive and must be unique.

The following sections list the `username` commands.

10.2.1 Username and User Commands

The first table lists the commands for users.

Table 38 username Commands Summary: Users

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show username [username]`	Displays information about the specified user or about all users set up in the Zyxel Device.
`username username nopassword user-type {admin | guest | limited-admin | user}`	Creates a user with the specified type and username, and no password. If the user already exists, this command removes the user's password and changes the user type.
`username username password password user-type {admin | guest | limited-admin | user}`	Creates a user with the specified user type, username, and password. If the user already exists, this command changes the user's type and password. *password* : Use 1-63 printable ASCII characters, except double quotation marks (") and question marks (?).
`username username logon-due-time time`	*time*: HH:MM in 24-hour time format.
`username username encrypted-password <ciphertext> user-type {admin | guest | limited-admin | user}`	Sets a user account password by ciphertext.
`username username user-type ext-user`	Creates the specified user (if it does not already exist) and sets the user type to **Ext-User**.
`no username username`	Deletes the specified user.
`username rename username username`	Renames the specified user (first *username*) to the specified username (second *username*).
`username username [no] description description`	Sets the description for the specified user. The `no` command clears the description. *description*: Use alphanumeric and `( )+/ :=?!*#@$_%-` characters, and it can be up to 60 characters long.
`username username encrypted-password <password>`	Sets a user account password by ciphertext. Normally you would use `username password <clear text>` to set the password. In special case cases (for GUI apply), you can use `username encrypted-password <ciphertext>` to set password.
`username username logon-time-setting <default | manual>`	Sets the account to use the factory default lease and reauthentication times or custom ones.
`username username [no] logon-lease-time <0..1440>`	Enter the number of minutes the user has to renew the current session before the user is logged out. • You can specify 1 to 1440 minutes. • Specify 0 to make the number of minutes unlimited. • The `no command` sets the lease time to five minutes, regardless of the current default setting for new users.

Table 38 username Commands Summary: Users (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`username *username* [no] logon-re-auth-time <0..1440>`	Enter the maximum number of minutes the user can be logged in to the Zyxel Device before the user is logged out. • You can specify 1 to 1440 minutes. • Specify 0 to make the number of minutes unlimited. • The `no command` sets the reauthorization time to five minutes, regardless of the current default setting for new users.
`username *username* use-unique-default-password user-type admin`	Resets the password of the Zyxel Device to the default settings. The default password is unique to each Zyxel Device and is shown on the label. If your Zyxel Device does not have a password on the label, use "1234".

10.2.2 User Setting Commands

This table lists the commands for user settings.

Table 39 users Commands Summary: Settings

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show users default-setting user-type {admin | limited-admin| guest| ext-user| user}}`	Displays the default lease and reauthentication times for the specified type of user accounts.
`show users default-setting all`	Displays the default lease and reauthentication times for all types of user account.
`users default-setting [no] logon-lease-time <0..1440>`	Sets the default lease time (in minutes) for each new user. Set it to zero to set unlimited lease time. The `no` command sets the default lease time to five.
`users default-setting [no] logon-re-auth-time <0..1440>`	Sets the default reauthorization time (in minutes) for each new user. Set it to zero to set unlimited reauthorization time. The `no` command sets the default reauthorization time to thirty.
`users default-setting [no] user-type <admin |limited-admin>`	Sets the default user type for each new user. The `no` command sets the default user type to user.
`[no] password complexity-verify`	Enforces a complex user password consisting of at least 8 characters and at most 64. The password must have: • At least 1 upper case letter. • At least 1 lower case letter. • At least 1 number • At least 1 special character from the keyboard, such as `~!@#$%^&*()_+={}|;:'<,>./\"-
`show password complexity-verify status`	Displays if the password complexity rule is enabled.
`show users retry-settings`	Displays the current retry limit settings for users.
`[no] users retry-limit`	Enables the retry limit for users. The `no` command disables the retry limit.

Table 39 users Commands Summary: Settings (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] users retry-count <1..99>`	Sets the number of failed login attempts a user can have before the account or IP address is locked out for lockout-period minutes. The no command sets the retry-count to five.
`[no] users lockout-period <1..65535>`	Sets the amount of time, in minutes, a user or IP address is locked out after retry-count number of failed login attempts. The no command sets the lockout period to thirty minutes.
`show users simultaneous-logon-settings`	Displays the current settings for simultaneous logins by users.
`[no] users simultaneous-logon {administration | access} enforce`	Enables the limit on the number of simultaneous logins by users of the specified account-type. The no command disables the limit, or allows an unlimited number of simultaneous logins.
`[no] users simultaneous-logon {administration | access} limit <1..1024>`	Sets the limit for the number of simultaneous logins by users of the specified account-type. The no command sets the limit to one.

10.2.2.1 User Setting Command Examples

The following commands show the current settings for the number of simultaneous logins.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show users simultaneous-logon-settings
enable simultaneous logon limitation for administration account: no
maximum simultaneous logon per administration account          : 1
```

10.2.3 Additional User Commands

This table lists additional commands for users.

Table 40 users Commands Summary: Additional

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show users {`*`username`*` | all | current}`	Displays information about the users logged onto the system.
`show lockout-users`	Displays users who are currently locked out.
`unlock lockout-users`*` ip `*`| console`	Unlocks the specified IP address.
`users force-logout`*` ip `*`|`*` username`*	Logs out the specified logins.

10.2.3.1 Additional User Command Examples

The following commands display the users that are currently logged in to the Zyxel Device and forces the logout of all logins from a specific IP address.

```
Router# configure terminal
outer(config)# show users all
No.  Name                 Type       From
     Service    Session Time Idle Time    Lease Timeout Re-Auth. Timeout
================================================================================
1    admin                admin      172.17.16.101
     http/https 04:31:01     unlimited    unlimited     unlimited
2    admin                admin      console
     console    04:23:51     unlimited    unlimited     unlimited
Router(config)# users force-logout 172.17.16.101
Logout user 'admin'(from 172.17.16.101): OK
Total 1 user has been forced logout
Router(config)# show users all
No.  Name                 Type       From
     Service    Session Time Idle Time    Lease Timeout Re-Auth. Timeout
================================================================================
1    admin                admin      console
     console    04:24:55     unlimited    unlimited     unlimited
```

The following commands display the users that are currently locked out and then unlocks the user who is displayed.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show lockout-users
No.  Username Tried                  From            Lockout Time Remaining
================================================================================
No.  From            Failed Login Attempt    Record Expired Timer
================================================================================
1    172.17.13.60    2                       46

Router(config)# unlock lockout-users 172.17.13.60
User from 172.17.13.60 is unlocked
Router(config)# show lockout-users
No.  Username Tried                  From            Lockout Time Remaining
================================================================================
No.  From            Failed Login Attempt    Record Expired Timer
================================================================================
```

CHAPTER 11
AP Management

This chapter shows you how to configure wireless AP management options on your Zyxel Device.

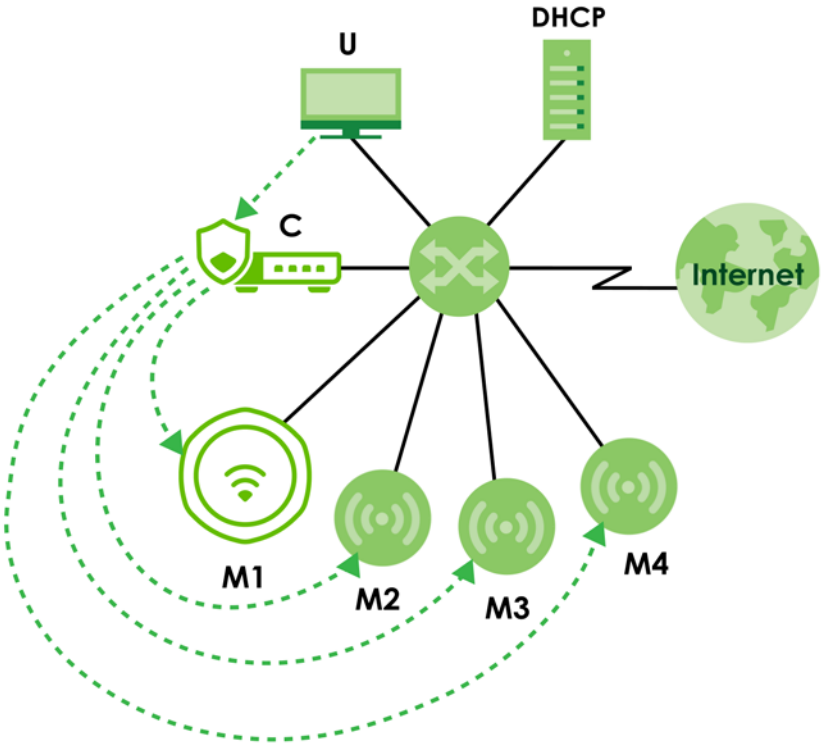
11.1 AP Management Overview

The Zyxel Device supports CAPWAP. An AP controller (APC) uses Control And Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP, see RFC 5415) to discover and configure multiple managed APs. This is Zyxel's implementation of the CAPWAP protocol (RFC 5415). The CAPWAP data flow is protected by Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS).

The Zyxel Device can be a standalone AP (default), or a CAPWAP managed AP.

The following figure illustrates a CAPWAP wireless network. The user (**U**) configures the AP controller (**C**), which then automatically updates the configurations of the managed APs (**M1** ~ **M4**).

Figure 9 CAPWAP Network Example



CAPWAP Discovery and Management

The link between CAPWAP-enabled access points proceeds as follows:

1. An AP in managed AP mode joins a wired network (receives a dynamic IP address).
2. The AP sends out a discovery request, looking for a CAPWAP AP controller.
3. If there is an AP controller on the network, it receives the discovery request. If the AP controller is in **Manual** mode it adds the details of the AP to its **Unmanaged Access Points** list, and you decide which available APs to manage. If the AP controller is in **Always Accept** mode, it automatically adds the AP to its **Managed Access Points** list and provides the managed AP with default configuration information, as well as securely transmitting the DTLS pre-shared key. The managed AP is ready for association with WiFi clients.

Managed AP Finds the Controller

A managed Zyxel Device can find the controller in one of the following ways:

- Manually specify the controller's IP address in the Web Configurator's **AC** (AP Controller) **Discovery** screen or using the `capwap ap ac-ip` command.
- Get the controller's IP address from a DHCP server with the controller's IP address configured as option 138.
- Get the controller's IP address from a DNS server SRV (Service) record.
- Broadcasting to discover the controller within the broadcast domain.

Note: The AP controller needs to have a static IP address. If it is a DHCP client, set the DHCP server to reserve an IP address for the AP controller.

CAPWAP and IP Subnets

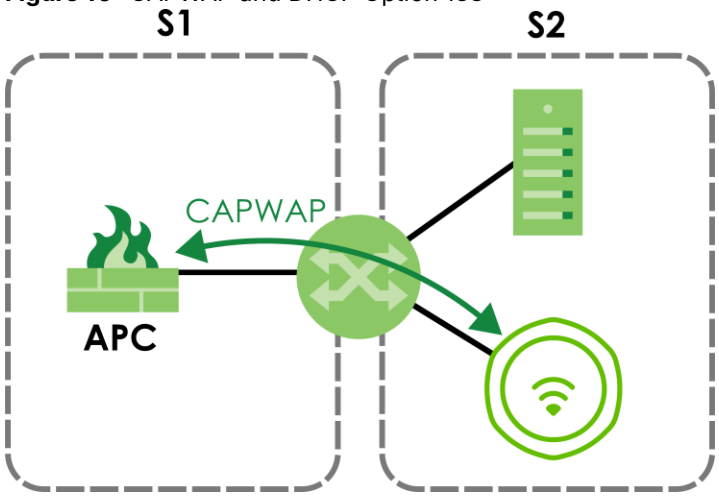
By default, CAPWAP works only between devices with IP addresses in the same subnet.

However, you can configure CAPWAP to operate between devices with IP addresses in different subnets by doing the following.

- Activate DHCP. Your network's DHCP server must support option 138 defined in RFC 5415.
- Configure DHCP option 138 with the IP address of the CAPWAP AP controller on your network.

DHCP Option 138 allows the CAPWAP management request (from the AP in managed AP mode) to reach the AP controller in a different subnet, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 10 CAPWAP and DHCP Option 138



Notes on CAPWAP

This section lists some additional features of Zyxel's implementation of the CAPWAP protocol.

- When the AP controller uses its internal Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) server, managed APs also use the AP controller's authentication server to authenticate WiFi clientWiFi clientWiFi clients.
- If a managed AP's link to the AP controller is broken, the managed AP continues to use the wireless settings with which it was last provided.

11.2 AP Management Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 41 Input Values for General AP Management Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ap_mac	The Ethernet MAC address of the managed AP. Enter 6 hexadecimal pairs separated by colons. You can use 0-9, a-z and A-Z.
slot_name	The slot name for the AP's on-board wireless LAN card. Use either *slot1*, *slot2*, or *slot3*. Note: The number of radio slots differ by models. See Zyxel Device Product Feature for the supported radio number.
profile_name	The wireless LAN radio profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
ap_description	The AP description. This is strictly used for reference purposes and has no effect on any other settings. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
sta_mac	The Ethernet MAC address of the managed station (or WiFi client). Enter 6 hexadecimal pairs separated by colons. You can use 0-9, a-z and A-Z.

The following table describes the commands available for AP management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands. See Wireless LAN Profiles Overview for more information about WLAN profiles the radios use.

Table 42 Command Summary: AP Management

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`wlan slot_name`	Enters the sub-command mode for the specified radio on the Zyxel Device.
`[no] activate`	Enables the specified radio. The no command disables the radio.
`ap profile radio_profile_name`	Sets the radio (*slot_name*) to AP mode and assigns a created radio profile to the radio.
`output-power <0..30>`	Sets the output power (between 0 to 30 dBm) for the specified radio.
`repeater profile radio_profile_name`	Sets the specified radio (*slot_name*) to repeater mode and assigns a created radio profile to the radio.
`rootap profile radio_profile_name`	Sets the specified radio (*slot_name*) to root AP mode and assigns a created radio profile to the radio.
`ssid profile index ssid_profile_name`	Assigns an SSID profile to this radio. Requires an existing SSID profile.
`wds_profile wds_profile_name`	Selects the WDS profile the radio (in repeater or root AP mode) uses to connect to a root AP or repeater.
`wds_uplink {auto | manual bssid mac_address}`	Sets how the radio (in repeater mode) connect to a root AP or repeater. `auto`: to have the Zyxel Device automatically use the settings in the applied WDS profile to connect to a root AP or repeater. `manual`: to have the Zyxel Device connect to the root AP or repeater with the specified MAC address. You need to configure the MAC address of the root AP or repeater with which you want the Zyxel Device to associate.

Table 42 Command Summary: AP Management (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`wireless-bridge {enable | disable}`	Enables or disables wireless bridging on the specified radio (*slot_name*). The Zyxel Device must support LAN provision and the radio must be in repeater mode. VLAN and bridge interfaces are created automatically according to the LAN port's VLAN settings. When wireless bridging is enabled, the Zyxel Device in repeater mode can still transmit data through its Ethernet port(s) after the WDS link is up. This allows you to extend your wired network to a new area wirelessly, when it is difficult to run cables to that area. The Zyxel Devices in the same WDS must use the same management VLAN ID. Traffic with VLAN ID tags can only pass through or go to the Zyxel Devices with the same VLAN ID tags. When you enable wireless bridge on the specified radio, make sure to set the same VLAN IDs for the devices in your network below: • Root AP. • Repeater AP. • Other Zyxel Devices the traffic might pass through. Note: Be careful to avoid bridge loops. A bridge loop occurs when there are two layer-2 paths between the same endpoints, causing broadcast packets to be sent back and forth indefinitely.
`wireless-bridge vlan`	Enters the sub-command mode to configure wireless bridge VLAN ID table.
`[no] vlanid <1..4094>`	Adds a VLAN ID to the wireless bridge VLAN ID table. The no command removes the specified VLAN ID from the wireless bridge VLAN ID table.
`exit`	Exits the sub-command mode of wireless bridge VLAN configuration.

Table 42 Command Summary: AP Management (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`smart-mesh mlo {enable | disable}`	Enables or disables the multi-link operation (MLO) of smart mesh for the root AP (Zyxel Device). MLO allows a WiFi client to connect to the Zyxel Device using multiple frequency bands simultaneously. This increases speed and improves reliability of the WiFi connection. MLO for smart mesh allows a Zyxel Device acting as a MLO repeater to connect to the Zyxel Device acting as a root AP (Zyxel Device) using multiple frequency bands simultaneously. For more details about MLO, please refer to the User's Guide. Note: In firmware version 7.20 and later, MLO is automatically enabled for WiFi networks using the 802.11be radio. As a result, this command doesn't work if your Zyxel Device is running firmware version 7.20 or later.
`smart-mesh mlo-link {all | 2G/5G | 2G/6G | 5G/6G}`	Select the bands for MLO uplinks for smart mesh. Uplink refers to the WDS link from: • the repeater to the root AP (Zyxel Device), • the second repeater to the first repeater, • the third repeater to the second repeater, and so on. Note: This feature is only supported on tri-band radio repeater APs. It is not supported on Root APs (Zyxel Device) or dual-band radio devices.

Table 42 Command Summary: AP Management (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show mlo_info mesh config`	Displays the MLO settings in the MLD (Multi-Link Device) for each MLD connection in the smart mesh. MLD refers to both the MLO uplinks and downlinks on the 2.4/5/6 GHz radios. The MLD ID is a unique identifier assigned to each MLD connection. `'mld_mac_addr'` is the MAC address of the single MLD interface after the 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, and 6 GHz (if supported) interfaces are combined. `'mld_link_macs'` are the MAC addresses of each individual interfaces: the 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz and 6 GHz (if supported) interfaces. `'mld_link_ids'` are the radio identifiers for the MLD connection when the 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, or 6 GHz interfaces are combined into a single MLD interface. '0' is for 2.4 GHz interface. '1' is for 5 GHz interface. '2' is for 6 GHz (if supported) interface. If the Zyxel Device is in root AP mode, this command displays the MLD MAC address, the MLD link MAC address, and the MLD link ID of the Zyxel Device. If the Zyxel Device is in repeater mode, this command displays the MLD MAC address, the MLD link MAC address, the MLD link ID, and the number of MLO links. In each MLD, the three interfaces (2.4/5/6 GHz radios) need to have the same MLD link MAC address and MLD link ID string. `'Not Partner Link'` means that this interface is not part of the MLD connection.
`show mlo_info mesh interface`	Displays the MLO settings of the root AP and the repeater AP for both downlink and uplink for the Zyxel Device in the mesh network. The settings include: • MLD (Multi-Link Device) ID • Slave Interface • Permanent HW Addr (Address) `MLD` refers to both the MLO uplinks and downlinks in the 2.4/5/6 GHz radios in the smart mesh of the Zyxel Device. The MLD ID is a unique identifier assigned to each MLD connection. `'Slave Interface'` refers to the radios in each MLD. The number of slave interfaces indicates the number of radios in one MLD. If the Zyxel Device supports three radios, there will be three slave interfaces under the MLD. `'Permanent HW Addr'` is the MAC address of one of the radios (slave interfaces) in the MLD of the Zyxel Device's mesh.

Table 42 Command Summary: AP Management (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show smart-mesh downlink-ap-info`	Displays smart-mesh information for the from the root AP (Zyxel Device) to the repeater APs, or between repeaters in the smart mesh. Downlink refers to the WDS link from the root AP (Zyxel Device) to the repeater APs. The information includes the downlink AP's: • MAC address • Band (2.4 / 5 / 6 GHz) • Tx (Transmit) Rate in Mbps • RX (Receive) Rate Mbps • Downlink Signal Strength in dBm.
`show smart-mesh repeater-ap-traffic`	Displays traffic statistics for the repeater APs in the mesh. The statistics include: • VAP name • WDS STA VAP MAC • Band (2.4 / 5 / 6 GHz) • TxPkts (Number of packets transmitted) • RxPkts (Number of packets received) • TxBytes (Amount of data transmitted in bytes) • RxBytes. (Amount of data received in bytes) VAP (Virtual Access Point) name refers to the repeater AP's name in the mesh network. A VAP (Virtual Access Point) is a virtual interface on an AP that allows one physical AP to create multiple virtual wireless networks (SSIDs). On Zyxel Devices that support MLO, a VAP is the interface used for the MLD connection. On Zyxel Devices without MLO support, a VAP is the interface used for a wireless connection. `WDS STA VAP MAC` refers to the MAC address that the repeater AP uses to connect to the root AP (Zyxel Device). Note: This command only works on repeater APs.
`show smart-mesh wireless-bridge`	Displays the wireless bridging settings in the mesh of the Zyxel Device. The settings include the configured status, running status, and the root AP type of the wireless bridge. Configured status shows `enable` or `disable` to indicate whether a wireless bridge is configured. Running status shows `enable` or `disable` to indicate whether the wireless bridge is currently active. The Root AP type displays one of the following statuses: • `supported`: The root AP of the Zyxel Device in the mesh supports wireless bridging. • `unsupported`: The root AP of the Zyxel Device in the mesh does not support wireless bridging. • `searching`: The Zyxel Device is still searching for a root AP. • `none`: The Zyxel Device currently acts as the root AP.

Table 42 Command Summary: AP Management (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show smart-mesh link-group`	Displays the details of the smart-mesh information for the uplink devices. This command helps you verify whether the MLO setting is successful.
`show smart-mesh state-machine-status`	Displays the role of the Zyxel Device in the mesh. This command displays "NAP" if smart mesh is disabled. If the Zyxel Device is the root AP, the status displays "ROOT". If the Zyxel Device is searching for a root AP, the status displays "REPEATER_PREP". If the Zyxel Device finds a root AP, the status displays "REPEATER_STABLE". If the Zyxel Device cannot find a root AP to connect to and tries to use other method, the status displays "SMESH_REPEATER".
`show smart-mesh mesh-ap-info`	Displays the status of the smart mesh on the Zyxel Device. If the Zyxel Device is in root AP mode, the MLO mode displays enabled or disabled. If the Zyxel Device is in repeater mode, the MLO mode displays the band used for the MLO uplink.
`show smart-mesh uplink-mode`	Displays the uplink mode of the smart mesh on the Zyxel Device. MLO-Link: The Zyxel Device is connecting to the uplink device using multiple bands. MLO-Fallback-Link: The Zyxel Device is connecting to the uplink device using a single band.
`show wireless-bridge vlan table`	Displays the VLAN IDs you configured in the wireless bridge VLAN ID table.
`show wireless-bridge port type`	Displays the Zyxel Device's type (indoor or outdoor) and number of Ethernet ports. Displays if the Zyxel Device supports wireless bridge.
`show wlan` *`slot_name`*	Displays the operating mode and profile settings for the specified radio.
`show wlan` *`slot_name`* `detail`	Displays the SSID, MAC address, VLAN ID and security mode for the specified radio.
`show wlan` *`slot_name`* `list all sta`	Displays statistics for the specified radio's wireless traffic.
`show wlan country-code`	Displays the country code of the Zyxel Device. The country code follows the ISO 3166-1 Alpha-2 standard and consists of two letters. For example, GR represents Greece. See Check the Country Code for more information.
`show wlan channels {11A|11G}`	Displays the channels available for the specified frequency band.

Table 42 Command Summary: AP Management (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show wlan channels {11A|11G|6G} [cw {20| 20/40| 20/40/80| 20/40/80/160| 240| 320}] [country country_code] [indoor|outdoor|psc]`	Displays the channels available for a specified frequency band, channel width, and/or country. You can also specify whether the channels are for indoor/outdoor use or PSCs (Preferred Scanning Channels). PSCs are specific channels that are in the 6 GHz band. WiFi 6E and WiFi 7 clients scan these channels first when searching for compatible Zyxel Device. This reduces the need to scan the entire 6 GHz band and helps WiFi clients discover the Zyxel Device more efficiently. Note: PSCs are available only in the 6 GHz band, and the available PSCs vary by country. At the time of writing, the available frequency band values are `11G` (2.4 GHz), `11A` (5 GHz), and `6G` (6 GHz). See Zyxel Device Product Feature for the frequency bands your Zyxel Device supports. The channel number ranges for each frequency band are as follows: • `11G` (2.4 GHz): Channels 1 to 14. • `11A` (5 GHz): Channels 36 to 165. • `6G` (6 GHz): Channels 1 to 233. The available channels vary by country code and channel width. See View the Available Channels for Each Frequency Band for more information. The channel widths for each frequency band are as follows: • `11G` (2.4 GHz): 20 or 20/40 MHz. • `11A` (5 GHz): 20, 20/40, 20/40/80, 20/40/80/160, or 240 MHz. • `6G` (6 GHz): 20, 20/40, 20/40/80, 20/40/80/160, or 320 MHz. See Suggested Channel Width for the recommended values for different deployment scenarios. For example, `show wlan channels 11A cw 20 country LK` displays the available 20 MHz channels for the 5 GHz band in Sri Lanka.
`show wlan radio macaddr`	Displays the MAC address assigned to the Zyxel Device's radio interfaces. Each radio corresponds to a physical wireless interface and has its own unique slot MAC address. For example, `slot 1: 16:36:0E:C8:59:D6` represents the slot MAC address of the 2.4 GHz radio interface. `slot 2: 16:36:0E:C8:59:D7` represents the slot MAC address of the 5 GHz radio interface. `slot 3: 16:36:0E:C8:59:D8` represents the slot MAC address of the 6 GHz radio interface.
`show wireless-hal current channel`	Displays the channel number the Zyxel Device's radio is using.

Table 42 Command Summary: AP Management (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show wireless-hal station info`	Displays the connected station information of the Zyxel Device's radio.
`show wireless-hal station number`	Displays the number of WiFi clients that are currently connected to the Zyxel Device.
`show wireless-hal statistic`	Displays the overall traffic information of the Zyxel Device's radio.
`show wireless-hal wds info {all | downlink | uplink}`	Displays the WDS traffic statistics between the Zyxel Device and a root AP or repeaters Uplink refers to the WDS link from the repeaters to the root AP. Downlink refers to the WDS link from the root AP to the repeaters.
`show wireless-hal wds interface {all | downlink | uplink}`	Displays status information for the WDS links. Uplink refers to the WDS link from the repeaters to the root AP. Downlink refers to the WDS link from the root AP to the repeaters.
`show wireless-hal wds number`	Displays the number of the root AP or repeater to which the Zyxel Device is connected using WDS.

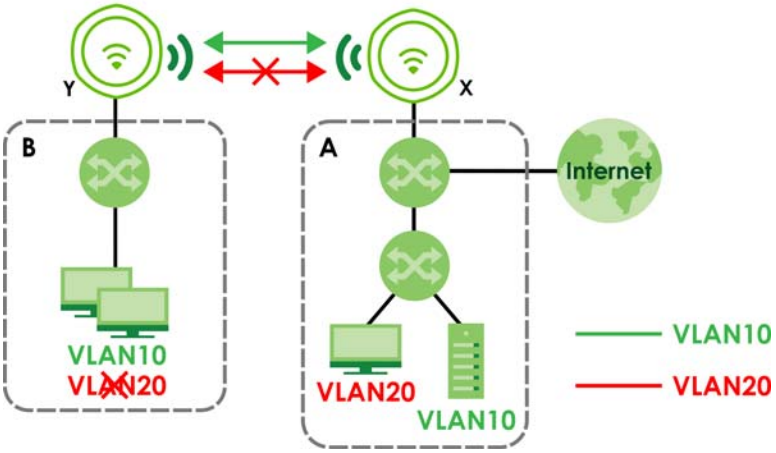
11.2.1 AP Management Commands Example

The followings are some AP management command examples.

Wireless Bridge Network Example

The following figure shows you how to wirelessly extend a wired network with wireless bridge.

Figure 11 Wireless Bridge (with VLAN10)



Suppose you have **Network A** at your main office and **Network B** at the branch office:

- **Network A** consists of client **A** devices, a root AP (**X**) and a gateway. Client **A** devices, **X**, and the gateway are connected using wired connections through a switch.

- **Network B** consists of client **B** devices, a repeater (**Y**) and a switch. Client **B** devices and **Y** are connected using wired connections through the switch.

The following example shows you how to combine **Network A** and **Network B** into one wireless bridge network.

Note: The switches must also have the same VLAN settings.

You must use the same radio for root AP and repeater. In this example, we use radio 1.

1 Set the AP **X** to root AP mode.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds-role rootap
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Router(config)#
```

2 Set the AP **Y** to repeater mode.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds-role repeater
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
dbctl> DB Success!
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11AX HE20 channel 6
Router(config)#
```

3 Create WDS profiles on both root AP (**X**) and repeater (**Y**). The WDS profile settings must be the same on **X** and **Y**.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan-wds-profile WDS_profile1
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)#
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)# ssid WDS_SSID1
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)#
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)# psk 13245768
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)#
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS_profile1)# exit
Router(config)#
```

4 Apply the WDS profiles on both root AP (**X**) and repeater (**Y**).

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wds_profile WDS_profile1
WDS_Role rootap
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Setup 2.4G 11NG HT20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11NG HT20 channel 6
Setup 2.4G 11NG HT20 channel 6
Router(config)#
```

5 Enable wireless bridge on repeater (**Y**). You can only transmit data through **Y**'s LAN ports when wireless bridge is enabled.

The Zyxel Devices build WDS connection and a wireless bridge network between Network **A** and Network **B** after the settings are applied. Use `show wireless-hal wds info {uplink|downlink}` to check the WDS link status.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)#
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot1)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# wireless-bridge enable
Router(config-wlan-slot)#
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config)#
```

Wireless Bridge VLAN IDs

VLAN IDs are sent across the wireless bridge so that only clients with the same VLAN IDs receive that network traffic.

This example follows the parameters below:

- Network **A** is using VLAN ID 10 and VLAN ID 20.
- Network **B** is only using VLAN ID 10.
- We only want the traffic of VLAN 10 to pass through the wireless bridge.

Please note that you need to create the same VLAN IDs on both the root AP (**X**) and repeater (**Y**).

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)#
Router(config)# wireless-bridge vlan
Router(wireless-bridge-vlan)#
Router(wireless-bridge-vlan)# vlanid 10
Router(wireless-bridge-vlan)#
Router(wireless-bridge-vlan)# exit
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show wireless-bridge vlan table
no.   Wireless-Bridge-VID
==========================================================================
1     10
Router(config)#
```

Wireless Connection and Traffic Information Example

The following commands display:

- number of currently connected WiFi clients
- connection information
- overall traffic information of the Zyxel Device's radio.

Use these commands to monitor the current wireless LAN status and connection of the Zyxel Device.

The following command displays the number of currently connected WiFi clients of each radio slot (**Slot1** - 2.4 GHz, **Slot2** - 5 GHz).

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show wireless-hal station number
Slot1: 0
Slot2: 1
```

The following command displays the identity information of currently connected clients and connection details. This can help you identify the WiFi clients connected to the Zyxel Device and check on respective connection statuses.

```
Router# configure terminal
!Shows the connected clients' info & connection info
Router(config)# show wireless-hal station info
index: 0
  MAC: a1:bc:2d:3e:f4:56
  IPv4: 123.45.67.89
  Slot: 2
  SSID: Zyxel
  Security: WPA2-PSK
  TxRate: 866M
  RxRate: 650M
  RSSI: 100
  RSSI dBm: -44
  Time: 13:11:21 2023/03/01
  VapIdx: 1
  Capability: 802.11ac
  DOT11 features: N/A
  Display SSID: Zyxel
```

The following command displays the overall throughput, traffic and signal information. You can use this command to check if there is any abnormal traffic or connection error.

```
Router# configure terminal
!Shows the overall traffic info
Router(config)# show wireless-hal statistic
Slot: 1
  ReceivedPktCount: 0
  TransmittedPktCount: 0
  wlanReceivedByte: 0
  wlanTransmittedByte: 0
  RetryCount: 0
  FCSErrorCount: 0
  TxPower: 24
  Channel Utilization: 61
Slot: 2
  ReceivedPktCount: 8053
  TransmittedPktCount: 24746
  wlanReceivedByte: 3302967
  wlanTransmittedByte: 3203254
  RetryCount: 0
  FCSErrorCount: 193
  TxPower: 23
  Channel Utilization: 14
```

11.3 AP Management Client Commands

The following table describes the commands available for configuring CAPWAP AP settings. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 43 Command Summary: CAPWAP AP Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`capwap ap ac-ip {primary ip secondary ip | auto}`	Sets the AP controller's address or sets the Zyxel Device (in managed mode) to use DHCP option 138 to get the AP controller's IP address.
`capwap ap vlan ip address {ip subnet_mask | dhcp}`	Sets the IP address of the Zyxel Device or sets it to use DHCP.
`capwap ap vlan [no] ip gateway ip`	Adds the gateway address of the Zyxel Device. The no command removes the gateway setting.
`capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 address ipv6_addr/prefix`	Sets the IPv6 address and the prefix length of the Zyxel Device. The no command removes the IPv6 address settings.
`capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6 {address-request | client}`	Set the Zyxel Device to act as a DHCPv6 client or get an IPv6 address from a DHCPv6 server. The no command sets the Zyxel Device to not get the IPv6 address from the DHCPv6 server.
`capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 dhcp6-request-object dhcp6_profile`	Sets the profile of DHCPv6 request settings that determine what additional information to get from the DHCPv6 server. The no command removes the DHCPv6 request settings profile.
`capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 enable`	Enables IPv6 stateless auto-configuration on the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device will generate an IPv6 address itself from a prefix obtained from an IPv6 router in the network. The no command disables IPv6 stateless auto-configuration.
`capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 gateway ipv6_addr`	Sets the IPv6 address of the default outgoing gateway. The no command removes the IPv6 gateway settings.
`capwap ap vlan [no] ipv6 nd ra accept`	Sets the Zyxel Device to accept IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement messages. The no command sets the Zyxel Device to discard IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisement messages.
`capwap ap vlan vlan-id <1..4094> [tag | untag]`	Sets the VLAN ID and tagging setting of the Zyxel Device.
`hybrid-mode [managed | standalone]`	Sets the Zyxel Device to act as a CAPWAP managed AP, or uses it in its default standalone mode. When the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode, you can manage the Zyxel Device using its own web configurator or commands. When the Zyxel Device is in managed mode, it can be configured ONLY by the AP controller.
`show capwap ap info`	Displays information about the Zyxel Device's wireless usage.

Table 43 Command Summary: CAPWAP AP Commands (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show capwap ap discovery-type`	Displays how the Zyxel Device gets its IP address.
`show capwap ap ac-ip`	Displays the controller's IP address.
`show hybrid-mode`	Displays the Zyxel Device management mode.

11.3.1 AP Management Client Commands Example

The following example shows you how to configure the Zyxel Device management mode to allow it to be managed by an AP controller and check the Zyxel Device management mode.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# hybrid-mode managed
Router(config)# show hybrid-mode
mode: managed
Router(config)#
```

The following example shows you how to configure the interface of the Zyxel Device, set the AP controller IP address and display the related settings.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show capwap_wtp ap discovery-type
Discovery type : Broadcast
Router(config)# capwap ap vlan ip address 192.168.1.37 255.255.255.0
Router(config)# capwap ap vlan ip gateway 192.168.1.32
Router(config)# capwap ap ac-ip 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.2
Router(config)# show capwap ap discovery-type
Discovery type : Static AC IP
Router(config)# show capwap ap ac-ip
AC IP: 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.2
Router(config)# exit
Router# show capwap ap info
             SM-State                    RUN(8)
         msg-buf-usage                   0/10 (Usage/Max)
        capwap-version                   10118
          Radio Number                   1/4 (Usage/Max)
            BSS Number                   8/8 (Usage/Max)
               IANA ID                   037a
           Description                   AP-0013499999FF
```

CHAPTER 12
Wireless LAN Profiles

This chapter shows you how to configure wireless LAN profiles on your Zyxel Device.

12.1 Wireless LAN Profiles Overview

The Zyxel Devices are designed to work explicitly with your Zyxel Devices. If you do not have on-board configuration files, you must create “profiles” to manage them. Profiles are preset configurations that are uploaded to the APs and which manage them. They include: Radio profiles, SSID profiles, Security profiles, and MAC Filter profiles. Altogether, these profiles give you absolute control over your wireless network.

12.2 AP Radio Profile Commands

The radio profile commands allow you to set up configurations for the radios onboard your various APs.

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 44 Input Values for General Radio Profile Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
radio_profile_name	The radio profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
wireless_channel_2g	Sets the 2.4 Ghz channel used by this radio profile. The channel range is `1 ~ 14`. Note: Your choice of channel may be restricted by regional regulations.
`wireless_channel_5g`	Sets the 5 Ghz channel used by this radio profile. The channel range is `36 ~ 165`. Note: Your choice of channel may be restricted by regional regulations.
`wireless_channel_6g`	Sets the 6 Ghz channel used by this radio profile. The channel range is `1 ~ 233`. Note: Your choice of channel may be restricted by regional regulations. Note: The available channels on the 6 GHz band are PSCs (Preferred Scanning Channels). PSCs are dedicated channels for WiFi clients to send probe requests on to discover a compatible AP, instead of scanning the entire 6 GHz band.
wlan_cw	Sets the channel width. Select either `20`, `20/40`, `20/40/80`, or `20/40/80/160`.
wlan_htgi	Sets the HT guard interval. Select either `long` or `short`.

Table 44 Input Values for General Radio Profile Commands (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
chain_mask	Sets the network traffic chain mask. The range is 1 ~ 7.
wlan_interface_index	Sets the radio interface index number. The range is 1 ~ 8.
wds_lan_interface_index	Sets the AP-WDS mode interface's index number. The range is 1 ~ 8.

The following table describes the commands available for radio profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 45 Command Summary: Radio Profile

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show wlan-radio-profile {all | rule_count | [radio_profile_name]}`	Displays the radio profile(s). `all`: Displays all radio profiles created on the Zyxel Device. `rule_count`: Displays how many radio profiles are created on the Zyxel Device. *radio_profile_name*: Displays the specified radio profile.
`wlan-radio-profile rename` *radio_profile_name1 radio_profile_name2*	Gives an existing radio profile (*radio_profile_name1*) a new name (*radio_profile_name2*).
`[no] wireless-health monitor inactivate`	Enables or disables wireless health monitoring for this profile. The Wireless Health feature helps users optimize their wireless network by enabling auto optimization actions when the wireless health is poor.
`wireless-health monitor nwifi interval<0..120>`	Sets the time (in minutes) to check for non-WiFi interference, including noise floor and non-WiFi channel utilization for this profile. 0 disables the wireless health monitoring for this profile.
`wireless-health monitor nwifi act-lock-time<1..1440>`	Sets the time (in minutes) to lock the channel for this profile after triggering the DCS (Dynamic Channel Selection). This command prevents the channel from changing frequently.
`wireless-health monitor nwifi hit<0..10>`	Sets the number of scans for the Zyxel Device to check if the following parameters exceed the threshold on the current 2.4/5/6 GHz channel: • Noise floor (in dBm) • Non-WiFi channel utilization (in percentage) The Zyxel Device triggers the DCS after 5 poor health scans and switches to channels with better conditions.
`wireless-health monitor nwifi cont-hit<0..10>`	Sets the number of consecutive scans for the Zyxel Device to check if the following parameters exceed the threshold on the current 2.4/5/6 GHz channel: • Noise floor (in dBm) • Non-WiFi channel utilization (in percentage) The Zyxel Device triggers the DCS after 3 consecutive poor health scans and switches to channels with better conditions.

Table 45 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
wireless-health monitor nwifi 2g-util-th<0..100>	Sets the threshold for non-WiFi channel utilization (in percentage) in wireless health monitoring for the 2.4 GHz WiFi channel. The lower the value, the less interference from non-WiFi devices, as there is less usage of the non-WiFi signal.
wireless-health monitor nwifi 2g-nf-th<-105..-20>	Sets the threshold for the noise floor (in dBm) in wireless health monitoring for the 2.4 GHz WiFi channel. The lower the value, the stronger the signal as there is less background noise interference.
wireless-health monitor nwifi 5g-util-th<0..100>	Sets the threshold for non-WiFi channel utilization (in percentage) in wireless health monitoring for the 5 GHz WiFi channel. The lower the value, the less interference from non-WiFi devices, as there is less usage of the non-WiFi signal.
wireless-health monitor nwifi 5g-nf-th<-105..-20>	Sets the threshold for the noise floor (in dBm) in wireless health monitoring for the 5 GHz WiFi channel. The lower the value, the stronger the signal as there is less background noise interference.
wireless-health monitor nwifi 6g-util-th<0..100>	Sets the threshold for non-WiFi channel utilization (in percentage) in wireless health monitoring for the 6 GHz WiFi channel. The lower the value, the less interference from non-WiFi devices, as there is less usage of the non-WiFi signal.
wireless-health monitor nwifi 6g-nf-th<-105..-20>	Sets the threshold for the noise floor (in dBm) in wireless health monitoring for the 6 GHz WiFi channel. The lower the value, the stronger the signal as there is less background noise interference.
[no] wlan-radio-profile *radio_profile_name*	Enters configuration mode for the specified radio profile. Use the *no* parameter to remove the specified profile.
2g-channel *wireless_channel_2g*	Sets the broadcast band for this profile in the 2.4 Ghz frequency range. The default is 6.
2g-multicast-speed *wlan_2g_support_speed*	When you disable multicast to unicast, use this command to set the data rate {1.0 | 2.0 | …} in Mbps for 2.4 GHz multicast traffic.
2g-wlan-rate-control *rate_2g*	Sets the minimum data rate that 2.4 Ghz WiFi clients can connect at, in Mbps. *rate_2g*: At the time of writing, allowed values are – 1, 2, 5. 5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54. Increasing the minimum data rate can reduce network overhead and improve WiFi network performance in high density environments. However, WiFi clients that do not support the minimum data rate will not be able to connect to the AP.
5g-channel *wireless_channel_5g*	Sets the broadcast band for this profile in the 5 GHz frequency range.

Table 45 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`5g-multicast-speed wlan_5g_basic_speed`	When you disable multicast to unicast, use this command to set the data rate {`6.0 | 9.0 | …`} in Mbps for 5 GHz multicast traffic.
`5g-wlan-rate-control rate_5g`	Sets the minimum data rate that 5 Ghz WiFi clients can connect at, in Mbps. *rate_5g*: At the time of writing, allowed values are – 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54. Increasing the minimum data rate can reduce network overhead and improve WiFi network performance in high density environments. However, WiFi clients that do not support the minimum data rate will not be able to connect to the AP.
`6g-channel wireless_channel_6g`	Sets the broadcast band for this profile in the 6 GHz frequency range.
`6g-multicast-speed wlan_6g_basic_speed`	When you disable multicast to unicast, use this command to set the data rate {`6.0 | 9.0 | … | 54.0`} in Mbps for 6 GHz multicast traffic.
`6g-wlan-rate-control rate_6g`	Sets the minimum data rate that 6 Ghz WiFi clients can connect at, in Mbps. *rate_6g*: At the time of writing, the allowed values are – 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54. Increasing the minimum data rate can reduce network overhead and improve WiFi network performance in high density environments. However, WiFi clients that do not support the minimum data rate will not be able to connect to the AP.
`[no] activate`	Makes this profile active or inactive.
`[no] ampdu`	Activates MPDU frame aggregation for this profile. Use the *no* parameter to disable it. Message Protocol Data Unit (MPDU) aggregation collects Ethernet frames along with their 802.11n headers and wraps them in a 802.11n MAC header. This method is useful for increasing bandwidth throughput in environments that are prone to high error rates. By default this is enabled.
`[no] amsdu`	Activates MPDU frame aggregation for this profile. Use the *no* parameter to disable it. Mac Service Data Unit (MSDU) aggregation collects Ethernet frames without any of their 802.11n headers and wraps the header-less payload in a single 802.11n MAC header. This method is useful for increasing bandwidth throughput. It is also more efficient than A-MPDU except in environments that are prone to high error rates. By default this is enabled.
`band wlan_band band-mode wlan_band_mode`	Sets the radio band and 802.11 wireless mode for this profile. *wlan_band*: 2.4G, 5G, 6G *wlan_band_mode*: bg, bgn, bgnax, bgnaxbe, a, ac, an,anacax, anacaxbe, ax, be

Table 45 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`ch-width <20| 20/40| 20/40/80| 20/40/80/160| 240| 320>`	Sets the channel width for this profile. The available channel width values depend on the frequency band and Zyxel Device models. See Zyxel Device Product Feature for the frequency bands and channel widths for your Zyxel Device. See Check Country Code and Set the Channel Width and Suggested Channel Width for the recommended values for different deployment scenarios: • 2.4 GHz: 20 or 20/40 MHz. • 5 GHz: 20, 20/40, 20/40/80, 20/40/80/160, or 240 MHz. • 6 GHz: 20, 20/40, 20/40/80, 20/40/80/160, or 320 MHz.
`beacon-interval <40..1000>`	Sets the beacon interval for this profile. When a wirelessly networked device sends a beacon, it includes with it a beacon interval. This specifies the time period before the device sends the beacon again. The interval tells receiving devices on the network how long they can wait in low-power mode before waking up to handle the beacon. This value can be set from 40 ms to 1000 ms. A higher value reduces the frequency of beacon transmissions and the power consumption of WiFi clients. The default is 100 ms.
`[no] block-ack`	Makes `block-ack` active or inactive. Use the *no* parameter to disable it.
`bss-color <0..63>`	Sets the BSS color of the Zyxel Device, which distinguishes it from other nearby APs when they transmit over the same channel. Set it to 0 to automatically assign a BSS color.
`[no] disable-bss-color`	Disables BSS coloring. Use the no command to enable BSS coloring.
`[no] ctsrts <0..2347>`	Sets or removes the RTS/CTS value for this profile. Use RTS/CTS to reduce data collisions on the wireless network if you have WiFi clients that are associated with the same AP but out of range of one another. When enabled, a WiFi client sends an RTS (Request To Send) and then waits for a CTS (Clear To Send) before it transmits. This stops WiFi clients from transmitting packets at the same time (and causing data collisions). A WiFi client sends an RTS for all packets larger than the number (of bytes) that you enter here. Set the RTS/CTS equal to or higher than the fragmentation threshold to turn RTS/CTS off. The default is 2347.
`dcs time-interval interval`	Sets the interval that specifies how often DCS should run.
`dcs sensitivity-level {high|medium|low}`	Sets how sensitive DCS is to radio channel changes in the vicinity of the AP running the scan.

Table 45 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`dcs client-aware {enable|disable}`	When enabled, this ensures that the Zyxel Device will not change channels as long as a client is connected to it. If disabled, the Zyxel Device may change channels regardless of whether it has clients connected to it or not.
`dcs channel-deployment {3-channel|4-channel}`	Sets either a 3-channel deployment or a 4-channel deployment. In a 3-channel deployment, the AP running the scan alternates between the following channels: 1, 6, and 11. In a 4-channel deployment, the AP running the scan alternates between the following channels: 1, 4, 7, and 11 (FCC) or 1, 5, 9, and 13 (ETSI). Set the option that is applicable to your region. (Channel deployment may be regulated differently between countries and locales.)
`dcs 2g-selected-channel` *`2.4g_channels`*	Specifies the channels that are available in the 2.4 GHz band when you manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device can use.
`dcs 5g-selected-channel` *`5g_channels`*	Specifies the channels that are available in the 5 GHz band when you manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device can use.
`dcs 6g-selected-channel` *`6g_channels`*	Specifies the channels that are available in the 6 GHz band when you manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device can use.
`dcs dcs-2g-method {auto|manual}`	Sets the Zyxel Device to automatically search for available channels or manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device uses in the 2.4 GHz band.
`dcs dcs-5g-method {auto|manual}`	Sets the Zyxel Device to automatically search for available channels or manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device uses in the 5 GHz band.
`dcs dcs-6g-method {auto|manual}`	Sets the Zyxel Device to automatically search for available channels or manually configure the channels the Zyxel Device uses in the 6 GHz band.

Table 45 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`dcs dfs-aware {enable|disable}`	Enable this to force the Zyxel Device to only use the non-DFS channels. Disable this to allow the Zyxel Device to use the DFS channels for more channel options. Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) is a WiFi channel allocation scheme that allows APs to use channels in the 5 GHz band normally reserved for radar. Before using a DFS channel, an AP must ensure there is no radar present by performing a Channel Availability Check (CAC). This check takes 1-10 minutes, depending on the country in which the AP is located. The Zyxel Device only switches to a DFS channel when a nearby AP is broadcasting the same SSID the Zyxel Device uses. This allows WiFi clients to switch to connect to the same SSID on another AP when the Zyxel Device is under the CAC process before switching to a DFS channel. The nearby AP's SSID signal strength must be greater than the specified RSSI threshold. The nearby AP's SSID channel utilization percentage must be under the specified threshold. You can specify the threshold using the `dcs dfs-aware-neighbor-rssi <-20...-105>` and `dcs dfs-aware-neighbor-ch-util <0-100>` commands.
`dcs dfs-aware-neighbor-rssi <-20...-105>`	Sets the minimum RSSI threshold (dBm) requirement of the nearby AP's SSID signal strength.
`dcs dfs-aware-neighbor-ch-util <0-100>`	Sets the maximum threshold (percentage) of the nearby AP's SSID channel utilization.
`dcs mode {interval|schedule}`	Sets the Zyxel Device to use DCS at the end of the specified time interval or at a specific time on selected days of the week.
`dcs schedule <hh:mm> {mon|tue|wed|thu|fri|sat|sun}`	Sets what time of day (in 24-hour format) the Zyxel Device starts to use DCS on the specified day(s) of the week.
`description` *`description`*	Sets the description for the profile. You may use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive
`[no] disable-dfs-switch`	Makes the DFS switch active or inactive. By default this is inactive.
`[no] dot11n-disable-coexistence`	Fixes the channel bandwidth as 40 MHz. The no command has the Zyxel Device automatically choose 40 MHz if all the clients support it or 20 MHz if some clients only support 20 MHz.
`dtim-period <1..255>`	Sets the DTIM period for this profile. Delivery Traffic Indication Message (DTIM) is the time period after which broadcast and multicast packets are transmitted to mobile clients in the Active Power Management mode. A high DTIM value can cause clients to lose connectivity with the network. This value can be set from 1 to 255. The default is 1.

Table 45 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] frag <256..2346>`	Sets or removes the fragmentation value for this profile. The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. The default is 2346.
`guard-interval wlan_htgi`	Sets the guard interval for this profile. The default for this is *short*.
`[no] htprotect`	Activates HT protection for this profile. Use the *no* parameter to disable it. By default, this is disabled.
`[no] ignore-country-ie`	Prevents the AP from broadcasting a country code, also called a country Information Element (IE), in beacon frames. This makes the AP incompatible with 802.11d networks and devices. The no command allows the AP to broadcast the country code. 802.11d is a WiFi network specification that allows an AP to broadcast a country code to WiFi clients. The country code tells clients where the AP is located. Note: Run this command if WiFi clients are unable to connect to the AP because of an incompatible country code.
`limit-ampdu < 100..65535>`	Sets the maximum frame size to be aggregated. By default this is 50000.
`limit-amsdu <2290..4096>`	Sets the maximum frame size to be aggregated. The default is 4096.
`[no] nol-channel-block`	Enables or disables DFS channel blocking when the Zyxel Device detects radar signals within the range of that DFS channel.
`[no] multicast-to-unicast`	"Multicast to unicast" broadcasts wireless multicast traffic to all WiFi clients as unicast traffic to provide more reliable transmission. The data rate changes dynamically based on the application's bandwidth requirements. Although unicast provides more reliable transmission of the multicast traffic, it also produces duplicate packets. The no command turns multicast to unicast off to send wireless multicast traffic at the rate you specify with the `2g-multicast-speed`, `5g-multicast-speed` or `6g-multicast-speed` command.
`[no] reject-legacy-station`	Allows only 802.11 n/ac/ax clients to connect, and reject 802.11a/b/g clients. Use the no command to also allow 802.11a/b/g clients.
`role {ap}`	Sets the profile's wireless LAN radio operating mode. Use ap to have the radio function as an access point with one or more BSSIDs.

Table 45 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] rssi-thres`	Sets whether or not to use the Received Signal Strength Indication (RSSI) threshold to ensure WiFi clients receive good throughput. This allows only WiFi clients with a strong signal to connect to the Zyxel Device.
`rssi-dbm <-20..-105>`	When using the RSSI threshold, set a minimum client signal strength for connecting to the AP. -20 dBm is the strongest signal you can require and -105 is the weakest.
`rssi-kickout <-20..-105>`	Set a minimum kick-off signal strength. You can set from -20dBm (the strongest signal) to -105dBm (the weakest signal). When a WiFi client's signal strength is lower than the specified threshold, the Zyxel Device checks the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client. The Zyxel Device will only disconnect the WiFi client when • the WiFi client signal strength falls below the kick-off strength and • the WiFi client's traffic throughput is below a minimum threshold. Use the `rssi-idlechecklvl {high|standard|low}` command to set the idle check level. Use the `rssi-idlecheckpktnum`/`rssi-idlecheckinterval` commands to specify the minimum traffic threshold and idle check period.
`rssi-idlechecklvl {high|standard|low}`	Set the minimum traffic throughput threshold here. `high`: Use this if you want the Zyxel Device to not disconnect a WiFi client with a weak signal strength (below the kick-off threshold) when the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is heavy. The Zyxel Device will disconnect the WiFi client if the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is medium or low. `standard`: Use this if you want the Zyxel Device to not disconnect a WiFi client with a weak signal strength (below the kick-off threshold) when the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is medium. The Zyxel Device will disconnect the WiFi client if the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is low. `low`: Use this if you want the Zyxel Device to not disconnect a WiFi client with a weak signal strength (below the kick-off threshold) when the traffic between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client is low. At the time of writing, the Zyxel Device will disconnect the WiFi client if there's no packet sent between the Zyxel Device and the WiFi client in one second.
`rssi-interval <1..86400>`	Sets the interval the Zyxel Device checks a WiFi client's signal strength.
`rssi-idlecheckpktnum <0..65535>`	Sets the traffic threshold the Zyxel Device uses to determine when to disassociate a WiFi client with poor signal strength. The Zyxel Device will disassociate a WiFi client when the WiFi client's traffic (number of packets) during the check period is below the threshold.

Table 45 Command Summary: Radio Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`rssi-idlecheckinterval <0..60>`	Sets the check period during which the Zyxel Device counts a WiFi client's traffic throughput and decides whether to disassociate the WiFi client.
`[no] rssi-retry`	Allows a WiFi client to try to associate with the Zyxel Device again after it is disconnected due to weak signal strength. Use the *no* parameter to disallow it.
`rssi-retrycount <1~100>`	Sets the maximum number of times a WiFi client can attempt to re-connect to the Zyxel Device.
`tx-mask` *`chain_mask`*	Sets the outgoing chain mask.
`rx-mask` *`chain_mask`*	Sets the incoming chain mask.
`subframe-ampdu <2..64>`	Sets the maximum number of frames to be aggregated each time. By default this is 32.
`exit`	Exits configuration mode for this profile.

12.2.1 AP radio Profile Commands Example

The following example shows you how to set up the radio profile named 'RADIO01', activate it, and configure it to use the following settings:

- 2.4G band and 802.11ac wireless mode with channel 6
- channel width of 20MHz
- a DTIM period of 2
- a beacon interval of 100ms
- AMPDU frame aggregation enabled
- an AMPDU buffer limit of 65535 bytes
- an AMPDU subframe limit of 64 frames
- AMSDU frame aggregation enabled
- an AMSDU buffer limit of 4096
- block acknowledgement enabled

- a short guard interval

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile RADIO01
Router(config-profile-radio)# activate
Router(config-profile-radio)# band 2.4G band_mode ac
Router(config-profile-radio)# 2g-channel 6
Router(config-profile-radio)# ch-width 20m
Router(config-profile-radio)# dtim-period 2
Router(config-profile-radio)# beacon-interval 100
Router(config-profile-radio)# ampdu
Router(config-profile-radio)# limit-ampdu 65535
Router(config-profile-radio)# subframe-ampdu 64
Router(config-profile-radio)# amsdu
Router(config-profile-radio)# limit-amsdu 4096
Router(config-profile-radio)# block-ack
Router(config-profile-radio)# guard-interval short
Router(config-profile-radio)# tx-mask 5
Router(config-profile-radio)# rx-mask 7
```

Station Disassociation-Signal Threshold Example

This example shows you how to enable signal strength check and set up a minimum signal threshold for connection. WiFi clients with signal strength below the minimum threshold will be disassociated. This helps to avoid WiFi clients with poor signal strength taking up the AP resources. Configure a radio profile RADIO01 with the following settings:

- Enable RSSI checking on WiFi client connections.
- Set the minimum signal threshold to -105 dBm.
- Set the RSSI check interval to every 15 seconds.

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile RADIO01
Router(config-profile-radio)# rssi-thres
Router(config-profile-radio)# rssi-kickout -105
Router(config-profile-radio)# rssi-interval 15
Router(config-profile-radio)# exit
Router(config)#
```

Then, set the idle check level to “low”. The Zyxel Device will only disassociate WiFi clients with poor signals when they are not sending any traffic..

```
Router(config)# wlan-radio-profile RADIO01
Router(config-profile-radio)# rssi-idlechecklvl low
Router(config-profile-radio)# exit
Router(config)#
```

12.3 SSID Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 46 Input Values for General SSID Profile Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ssid_profile_name	The SSID profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
ssid	The SSID broadcast name. You may use 1-32 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.
wlan_qos_category	Sets the type of QoS the SSID should use. *disable*: Turns off QoS for this SSID. *wmm*: Turns on QoS for this SSID. It automatically assigns Access Categories to packets as the device inspects them in transit. *wmm_be*: Assigns the "best effort" Access Category to all traffic moving through the SSID regardless of origin. *wmm_bk*: Assigns the "background" Access Category to all traffic moving through the SSID regardless of origin. *wmm_vi*: Assigns the "video" Access Category to all traffic moving through the SSID regardless of origin. *wmm_vo*: Assigns the "voice" Access Category to all traffic moving through the SSID regardless of origin.
security_profile	Assigns an existing security profile to the SSID profile. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
mac_filter_profile	Assigns an existing MAC filter profile to the SSID profile. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
description	Sets the description of the profile. You may use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.

The following table describes the commands available for SSID profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 47 Command Summary: SSID Profile

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show wlan-ssid-profile {all | rule_count | ssid_profile_name}`	Displays the SSID profile(s). `all`: Displays all profiles. `rule_count`: Displays how many SSID profiles are created on the Zyxel Device. *ssid_profile_name*: Displays the specified profile.
`wlan-ssid-profile rename ssid_profile_name1 ssid_profile_name2`	Gives an existing SSID profile (*ssid_profile_name1*) a new name (*ssid_profile_name2*).
`[no] wlan-ssid-profile ssid_profile_name`	Enters configuration mode for the specified SSID profile. Use the *no* parameter to remove the specified profile.

Table 47 Command Summary: SSID Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
band {2.4G|5G|6G}	Sets the frequency bands to which this profile is applicable. You can use the ssid profile index *ssid_profile_name* command to assign the SSID profile to different radio slots. The SSID profile will only take effect on radio slots which are using the frequency bands the profile is applicable to.
[no] block-intra	Enables intra-BSSID traffic blocking. Use the no parameter to disable it in this profile. By default this is disabled.
description *description*	Sets a descriptive name for this profile.
[no] dot11k-v activate	Enable IEEE 802.11k/v assisted roaming on the Zyxel Device. When the connected clients request 802.11k neighbor lists, the Zyxel Device will response with a list of neighbor APs that can be candidates for roaming. Use the no parameter to disable it in this profile.
{downlink-rate-limit | uplink-rate-limit} *data_rate*	Sets the maximum incoming or outgoing transmission data rate (either in Mbps or Kbps) for each WiFi client. downlink-rate-limit: Sets the the maximum incoming transmission data rate on each WiFi client. uplink-rate-limit: Sets the the maximum outgoing transmission data rate on each WiFi client. data_rate: The range is from 0-160 in Mbps, or 161-160000 in Kbps.
exit	Exits configuration mode for this profile.
[no] hide	Prevents the SSID from being publicly broadcast. Use the no parameter to re-enable public broadcast of the SSID in this profile. By default this is disabled.
[no] l2isolation *l2_isolation_profile*	Assigns the specified layer-2 isolation profile to this SSID profile. Use the no parameter to remove it. By default, no layer-2 isolation profile is assigned.
[no] macfilter *mac_filter_profile*	Assigns the specified MAC filtering profile to this SSID profile. Use the no parameter to remove it. By default, no MAC filter is assigned.
[no] proxy-arp	Sets the Zyxel Device to answer ARP requests for an IP address on behalf of a client associated with this SSID. This can reduce broadcast traffic and improve network performance. Use the no parameter to disable Proxy ARP.
qos *wlan_qos_category*	Sets the QoS access category tag associated with this SSID.
security *security_profile*	Assigns the specified security profile to this SSID profile.
ssid	Sets the SSID. This is the name visible on the network to WiFi clients. Enter up to 32 characters, spaces and underscores are allowed.

Table 47 Command Summary: SSID Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] ssid-schedule`	Enables the SSID schedule. Use the no parameter to disable the SSID schedule.
`{mon|tue|wed|thu|fri|sat|sun} {enable | disable} <hh:mm> <hh:mm>`	Sets whether the SSID is enabled or disabled on each day of the week. This also specifies the hour and minute (in 24-hour format) to set the time period of each day during which the SSID is enabled/disabled. <hh:mm> <hh:mm>: If you set both start time and end time to 00:00, it indicates a whole day event. Note: The end time must be larger than the start time.
`[no] uapsd`	Enables Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery (U-APSD), which is also known as WMM-Power Save. This helpWiFi clientss increase battery life for battery-powered WiFi clients connected to the Zyxel Device using this SSID profile. Use the no parameter to disable the U-APSD feature.
`[no] vlan-id <1..4094>`	Applies to each SSID profile. If the VLAN ID is equal to the AP's native VLAN ID then traffic originating from the SSID is not tagged. The default VLAN ID is 1.

12.3.1 SSID Profile Example 1

The following example creates an SSID profile with the name 'Zyxel'. It makes the assumption that both the security profile (SECURITY01) and the MAC filter profile (MACFILTER01) already exist.

```
Router(config)# wlan-ssid-profile SSID01
Router(config-ssid-radio)# ssid Zyxel
Router(config-ssid-radio)# qos wmm
Router(config-ssid-radio)# security SECURITY01
Router(config-ssid-radio)# macfilter MACFILTER01
Router(config-ssid-radio)# exit
Router(config)#
```

12.3.2 SSID Profile Example 2

Follow the steps below to have the 2.4G WiFi clients and 5G WiFi clients to use the same SSID profile when connected to different radios.

1 Create an SSID profile **SSID01**, set the SSID. Set the band to 2.4G and 5G.

```
Router(config)# wlan-ssid-profile SSID01
Router(config-ssid-radio)# ssid Zyxel
Router(config-ssid-radio)# band 2.4G 5G
Router(config-ssid-radio)# exit
Router(config)#
```

2 Apply **SSID01** to radio **slot1** and radio **slot2**.

```
Router(config)# wlan slot1
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ssid profile 1 SSID01
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config)# wlan slot2
Router(config-wlan-slot)# ssid profile 1 SSID01
Router(config-wlan-slot)# exit
Router(config)#
```

3 Use the show command to check the current configurations on both radios. The 2.4G WiFi clients and 5G WiFi clients can now connect to radio **slot1** and **slot2** using the same SSID to access the Internet.

```
Router# show wlan slot1
slot: slot1
 card: none
 Role: ap
 Profile: default1
 SSID_profile_1: SSID01
 ...
 SSID_profile_8:
 SLOT_1_Output_power: 30dBm
 Activate: yes
 WDS_Role: none
 WDS_Profile: default
 WDS_uplink: auto
 WDS_Downlink: unlimited
 Band: 2.4G
 SSID_profile_1_band: 2.4G/5G
 ...
 SSID_profile_8_band:
Router#
```

12.4 Security Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 48 Input Values for General Security Profile Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
security_profile_name	The security profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
wep_key	Sets the WEP key encryption strength. Select either *64bit* or *128bit*.
wpa_key	Sets the WPA/WPA2 pre-shared key in ASCII. You may use 8~63 alphanumeric characters. This value is case-sensitive.
wpa_key_64	Sets the WPA/WPA2 pre-shared key in HEX. You muse use 64 alphanumeric characters.
secret	Sets the shared secret used by your network's RADIUS server.
auth-method	The authentication method used by the security profile.

The following table describes the commands available for security profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 49 Command Summary: Security Profile

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show wlan-security-profile {all | rule_count | security_profile_name}`	Displays the security profile(s). `all`: Displays all profiles. `rule_count`: Displays how many security profiles are created on the Zyxel Device. *`security_profile_name`*: Displays the specified profile.
`wlan-security-profile rename security_profile_name1 security_profile_name2`	Gives existing security profile (*`security_profile_name1`*) a new name, (*`security_profile_name2`*).
`[no] wlan-security-profile security_profile_name`	Enters configuration mode for the specified security profile. Use the *no* parameter to remove the specified profile.
`[no] server-acct <1..2> activate`	Activates the primary/secondary external accounting server. The Zyxel Device will use the secondary accounting server when the primary accounting server is down. Use `no` to disable the specified server. `1`: primary accounting server. `2`: secondary accounting server.
`server-acct <1..2> {host address host_name | ip address ipv4_address} port <1..65535> secret secret`	Sets the primary/secondary external accounting server IPv4 address, port and shared-key. `1`: primary accounting server. `2`: secondary accounting server. *`secret`*: the key shared between the external accounting server and the Zyxel Device. You can use up to 64 alphanumeric and special characters including the following: `~!@#$%^&*()_-+={}|\;:'<,>./.
`[no] accounting interim-interval <1..1440>`	Sets the time interval for how often the Zyxel Device is to send an interim update message with current client statistics to the accounting server. Use the no parameter to clear the interval setting.
`[no] accounting interim-update`	Sets the Zyxel Device to send accounting update messages to the accounting server at the specified interval. Use the no parameter to disable it.
`description description`	Sets the description for the profile. You may use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive
`[no] dot11r activate`	Turns on IEEE 802.11r fast roaming on the Zyxel Device. Use the `no` parameter to turn it off.

Table 49 Command Summary: Security Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
[no] dot11r ft-over-ds activate	Sets the clients to communicate with the target AP through the current AP (the Zyxel Device). The communication between the client and the target AP is carried in frames between the client and the current AP, and is then sent to the target AP through the wired Ethernet connection. Use the no parameter to have the clients communicate directly with the target AP.
[no] dot11w	Data frames in 802.11 WLANs can be encrypted and authenticated with WEP, WPA, WPA2 or WPA3. But 802.11 management frames, such as beacon/probe response, association request, association response, de-authentication and disassociation are always unauthenticated and unencrypted. IEEE 802.11w Protected Management Frames allows APs to use the existing security mechanisms (encryption and authentication methods defined in IEEE 802.11i WPA/WPA2) to protect management frames. This helps prevent wireless DoS attacks. Enables management frame protection (MFP) to add security to 802.11 management frames. Use the no parameter to disable it.
dot11w-op <1..2>	Sets whether WiFi clients have to support management frame protection in order to access the wireless network. 1: if you do not require the WiFi clients to support MFP. Management frames will be encrypted if the clients support MFP. 2: WiFi clients must support MFP in order to join the Zyxel Device's wireless network.
[no] dot1x-eap	Enables 802.1x secure authentication. Use the no parameter to disable it.
eap {external | internal *auth_method*}	Sets the 802.1x authentication method.
group-key <30..30000>	Sets the interval (in seconds) at which the AP updates the group WPA/WPA2 encryption key. The default is 1800.
idle <30..30000>	Sets the idle interval (in seconds) that a client can be idle before authentication is discontinued. The default is 3000.
[no] mac-auth activate	MAC authentication has the AP use an external server to authenticate WiFi clients by their MAC addresses. Users cannot get an IP address if the MAC authentication fails. The no parameter turns it off. RADIUS servers can require the MAC address in the WiFi client's account (username/password) or Calling Station ID RADIUS attribute.
mac-auth auth-method *auth_method*	Sets the authentication method for MAC authentication.

Table 49 Command Summary: Security Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`mac-auth case account {upper | lower}`	Sets the case (upper or lower) the external server requires for using MAC addresses as the account username and password. For example, use `mac-auth case account upper` and `mac-auth delimiter account dash` if you need to use a MAC address formatted like 00-11-AC-01-A0-11 as the username and password.
`mac-auth case calling-station-id {upper | lower}`	Sets the case (upper or lower) the external server requires for letters in MAC addresses in the Calling Station ID RADIUS attribute.
`mac-auth delimiter account {colon | dash | none}`	Specify the separator the external server uses for the two-character pairs within MAC addresses used as the account username and password. For example, use `mac-auth case account upper` and `mac-auth delimiter account dash` if you need to use a MAC address formatted like 00-11-AC-01-A0-11 as the username and password.
`mac-auth delimiter calling-station-id {colon | dash | none}`	Select the separator the external server uses for the pairs in MAC addresses in the Calling Station ID RADIUS attribute.
`mode {none | enhanced-open | wep | wpa2 | wpa2-mix | wpa3}`	Sets the security mode for this profile. `none` means no encryption is configured for this wlan security profile. `enhanced-open` uses Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) to secure the wireless connection when possible. `wpa2` uses AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) and password protection to secure the wireless connection. `wpa2-mix` allows the Zyxel Device WiFi network to use WPA2 security mode and provide a fallback WPA security mode for clients that only support WPA connections.

Table 49 Command Summary: Security Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] server-auth <1..2> {activate |require-ma}`	Activates the primary/secondary external RADIUS server or requests the external RADIUS server to send the message-authenticator for authentication. The Zyxel Device will use the secondary RADIUS server when the primary RADIUS server is down. A message-authenticator is used to validate the integrity and authenticity of messages exchanged between devices, commonly used in protocols such as RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service). It ensures that the message has not been altered during transmission and that it originates from a trusted source. The required message-authenticator prevents the Blast-RADIUS security issue. A Blast-RADIUS attack allows a man-in-the-middle attacker between the Zyxel Device and RADIUS server to fake a seemingly valid protocol accept message in response to a failed authentication request. Use Message-Authenticator to verify that the access-request is valid. Use no to disable the specified external RADIUS server or the message-authenticator.
`[no] radius-attr nas-id` *`string`*	Sets the NAS (Network Access Server) identifier attribute if the RADIUS server requires the Zyxel Device to provide it. The NAS identifier is to identify the source of access request. It could be the NAS's fully qualified domain name. Use no to remove the NAS identifier you set.
`[no] radius-attr nas-ip` *`ipv4_address`*	Sets the NAS (Network Access Server) IPv4 address attribute if the RADIUS server requires the Zyxel Device to provide it. Use no to remove the NAS IPv4 address you set.
`[no] reauth <30..30000>`	Sets the interval (in seconds) between authentication requests. The default is 0.
`server-auth <1..2> {host address` *`host_name`* `| ip address` *`ipv4_address`*`} port <1..65535> secret` *`secret`*	Sets the primary/secondary external RADIUS server IPv4 address, port number and shared key. 1: primary RADIUS server 2: secondary RADIUS server *`secret`*: the key shared between the external RADIUS server and the Zyxel Device. You can use up to 64 alphanumeric and special characters including the following: `~!@#$%^&*()_-+={}|\;:'<,>./.
`no server-auth <1..2>`	Clears the authentication setting of the primary/secondary RADIUS server. 1: primary RADIUS server 2: secondary RADIUS server

Table 49 Command Summary: Security Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] transition-mode`	Enables backward compatibility when used with WPA3 or Enhanced Open security mode. WPA3 falls back to WPA2, while Enhanced Open falls back to open (none). Use the `no` command to disable this feature.
`wep-auth-type {open | share}`	Sets the authentication key type to either *open* or *share*.
`wep <64 | 128> default-key <1..4>`	Sets the WEP encryption strength (*64 or 128*) and the default key index (*1 ~ 4*).
`wep-key <1..4> wep_key`	If you select WEP-64 enter 10 hexadecimal digits in the range of "A-F", "a-f" and "0-9" (for example, 0x11AA22BB33) for each Key used; or enter 5 ASCII characters (case sensitive) ranging from "a-z", "A-Z" and "0-9" (for example, MyKey) for each Key used. If you select WEP-128 enter 26 hexadecimal digits in the range of "A-F", "a-f" and "0-9" (for example, 0x00112233445566778899AABBCC) for each Key used; or enter 13 ASCII characters (case sensitive) ranging from "a-z", "A-Z" and "0-9" (for example, MyKey12345678) for each Key used. You can save up to four different keys. Enter the `default-key` (*1 ~ 4*) to save your WEP to one of those four available slots.
`wpa-encrypt {aes | auto}`	Sets the WPA/WPA2 encryption cipher type. `auto`: This automatically chooses the best available cipher based on the cipher in use by the WiFi client that is attempting to make a connection. `aes`: This is the Advanced Encryption Standard encryption method, a newer more robust algorithm than TKIP Not all WiFi clients may support this.
`wpa-psk {wpa_key | wpa_key_64}`	Sets the WPA/WPA2/WPA3 pre-shared key.
`[no] wpa2-preauth`	Enables pre-authentication to allow WiFi clients to switch APs without having to re-authenticate their network connection. The RADIUS server puts a temporary PMK Security Authorization cache on the WiFi clients. It contains their session ID and a pre-authorized list of viable APs. Use the `no` parameter to disable this.
`exit`	Exits configuration mode for this profile.

12.4.1 Security Profile Example

The following example creates a security profile with the name 'SECURITY01'.

```
Router(config)# wlan-security-profile SECURITY01
Router(config-security-profile)# mode wpa2
Router(config-security-profile)# wpa-encrypt aes
Router(config-security-profile)# wpa-psk 12345678
Router(config-security-profile)# idle 3600
Router(config-security-profile)# reauth 1800
Router(config-security-profile)# group-key 1800
Router(config-security-profile)# exit
Router(config)#
```

12.5 Captive Portal Profile Commands

A captive portal is a login web page where a network user has to be authenticated before they can access the network. These commands are supported in Cloud Managed mode only.

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 50 Input Values for General Captive Portal Profile Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
captive_profile_name	Sets the captive portal profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.

The following table describes the commands available for captive portal profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 51 Command Summary: Captive Portal Profile

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show captive-portal-profile {all | rule_count | wlan profile name}`	Displays the captive portal profile(s). `all`: Displays all profiles. `rule_count`: Displays how many captive portal profiles are created on the Zyxel Device. *wlan_profile_name*: Displays the specified profile.
`captive-portal-profile rename captive_portal_profile_name1 captive_portal_profile_name2`	Gives existing captive portal profile (*captive-portal-profile_name1*) a new name, (*captive-portal-profile_name2*).
`[no] captive-portal-profile captive_portal_profile_name`	Enters configuration mode for the specified security profile. Use the *no* parameter to remove the specified profile.

Table 51 Command Summary: Captive Portal Profile (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
[no] myradius <1..2> require-ma	Requests the external RADIUS server to send the message-authenticator for authentication. The Zyxel Device will use the secondary RADIUS server when the primary RADIUS server is down. A message-authenticator is used to validate the integrity and authenticity of messages exchanged between devices, commonly used in protocols such as RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service). It ensures that the message has not been altered during transmission and that it originates from a trusted source. The required message-authenticator prevents the Blast-RADIUS security issue. A Blast-RADIUS attack allows a man-in-the-middle attacker between the Zyxel Device and RADIUS server to fake a seemingly valid protocol accept message in response to a failed authentication request. Use Message-Authenticator to verify that the access-request is valid. Use no to disable the message-authenticator.
exit	Exits configuration mode for this profile.

12.6 MAC Filter Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 52 Input Values for General MAC Filter Profile Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
macfilter_profile_name	The MAC filter profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
description	Sets the description of the MAC address. You may use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.

The following table describes the commands available for MAC filter profile management. You must use the configure terminal command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 53 Command Summary: MAC Filter Profile

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show wlan-macfilter-profile {all | rule_count | [macfilter_profile_name]}`	Displays the MAC filter profile(s). `all`: Displays all profiles. `rule_count`: Displays how many MAC filter profiles are created on the Zyxel Device. *`macfilter_profile_name`*: Displays the specified profile.
`wlan-macfilter-profile rename` *`macfilter_profile_name1 macfilter_profile_name2`*	Gives an existing MAC filter profile (*`macfilter_profile_name1`*) a new name (*`macfilter_profile_name2`*).
`[no] wlan-macfilter-profile` *`macfilter_profile_name`*	Enters configuration mode for the specified MAC filter profile. Use the *no* parameter to remove the specified profile.
`filter-action {allow | deny}`	Permits the WiFi client with the MAC addresses in this profile to connect to the network through the associated SSID; select deny to block the WiFi clients with the specified MAC addresses. The default is set to *deny*.
`[no]` *`mac_addr`* `[description` *`description`*`]`	Specifies a MAC address associated with this profile. You can also set a description for the MAC address. Enter up to 60 characters. Spaces and underscores allowed.
`exit`	Exits configuration mode for this profile.

12.6.1 MAC Filter Profile Example

The following example creates a MAC filter profile with the name ‘MACFILTER01’.

```
Router(config)# wlan-macfilter-profile MACFILTER01
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# filter-action deny
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# 01:02:03:04:05:06  description MAC01
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# 01:02:03:04:05:07  description MAC02
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# 01:02:03:04:05:08  description MAC03
Router(config-macfilter-profile)# exit
Router(config)#
```

12.7 Layer-2 Isolation Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 54 Input Values for General Layer-2 Isolation Profile Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
l2isolation_profile_name	The layer-2 isolation profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
mac_address	The MAC address of the device that is allowed to communicate with the Zyxel Device's WiFi clients. Enter 6 hexadecimal pairs separated by colons. You can use 0-9, a-z and A-Z.
description	Sets the description name of MAC address in the profile. You may use 1-60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-).

The following table describes the commands available for Layer-2 Isolation profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 55 Command Summary: Layer-2 Isolation Profile

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show wlan-l2isolation-profile {all | rule_count | [l2isolation_profile_name]}`	Displays the layer-2 isolation profile(s) settings. `all`: Displays settings of all layer-2 isolation profiles configured on the Zyxel Device. `rule_count`: Displays how many layer-2 isolation profiles are created on the Zyxel Device. *l2isolation_profile_name*: Displays settings of the specified profile.
`wlan-l2isolation-profile rename` *l2isolation_profile_name1 l2isolation_profile_name2*	Gives the existing layer-2 isolation profile (*l2isolation_profile_name1*) a new name, (*l2isolation_profile_name2*).
`[no] wlan-l2isolation-profile` *l2isolation_profile_name*	Enters configuration mode for the specified layer-2 isolation profile. Use the *no* parameter to remove the specified profile.
`[no]` *mac_address*	Sets the MAC address of the device that is allowed to communicate with the Zyxel Device's WiFi clients in this profile.
`description` *description*	Sets the description name for the MAC address associated with this profile.
`exit`	Exits configuration mode for this profile.

12.7.1 Layer-2 Isolation Profile Example

The following example creates a layer-2 isolation profile with the name 'test1'.

```
Router(config)# wlan-l2isolation-profile test1
Router(config-wlan-l2isolation test1)# 00:a0:c5:01:23:45
Router(config-wlan-l2isolation test1)# description user1
Router(config-wlan-l2isolation test1)# exit
Router(config)#
```

12.8 WDS Profile Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 56 Input Values for General WDS Profile Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
wds_profile_name	The WDS profile name. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.

The following table describes the commands available for WDS profile management. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 57 Command Summary: WDS Profile

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show wlan-wds-profile {all | rule_count | [wds_profile_name]}`	Displays the WDS profile(s) settings. `all`: Displays settings of all WDS profiles configured on the Zyxel Device. `rule_count`: Displays how many WDS profiles are created on the Zyxel Device. *wds_profile_name*: Displays settings of the specified profile.
`wlan-wds-profile rename` *wds_profile_name1 wds_profile_name2*	Gives the existing WDS profile (*wds_profile_name1*) a new name, (*wds_profile_name2*).
`[no] wlan-wds-profile` *wds_profile_name*	Enters configuration mode for the specified WDS profile.
`psk` *psk*	Sets a pre-shared key of between 8 and 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols) or 64 hexadecimal characters.The key is used to encrypt the traffic between the APs.
`ssid` *ssid*	Sets the SSID with which you want the Zyxel Device to connect to a root AP or repeater to form a WDS.
`exit`	Exits configuration mode for this profile.

12.8.1 WDS Profile Example

The following example creates a WDS profile with the name 'WDS1', and shows the profile settings.

```
Router(config)# wlan-wds-profile WDS1
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS1)# ssid Zyxel-WDS
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS1)# psk qwer1234
Router(config-wlan-wds WDS1)# exit
Router(config)# show wlan-wds-profile WDS1
wds profile: WDS1
  reference: 0
  Id: 2
  Description:
  WDS_SSID: Zyxel-WDS
  WDS_PSK: qwer1234
Router(config)#
```

CHAPTER 13
Rogue AP

This chapter shows you how to set up Rogue Access Point (AP) detection and containment.

13.1 Rogue AP Detection Overview

Rogue APs are wireless access points operating in a network's coverage area that are not under the control of the network's administrators, and can potentially open holes in the network security. Attackers can take advantage of a rogue AP's weaker (or non-existent) security to gain illicit access to the network, or set up their own rogue APs in order to capture information from WiFi clients.

Conversely, a friendly AP is one that the Zyxel Device network administrator regards as non-threatening. This does not necessarily mean the friendly AP must belong to the network managed by the Zyxel Device; rather, it is any unmanaged AP within range of the Zyxel Device's own wireless network that is allowed to operate without being contained. This can include APs from neighboring companies, for example, or even APs maintained by your company's employees that operate outside of the established network.

13.2 Rogue AP Detection Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 58 Input Values for Rogue AP Detection Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ap_mac	Specifies the MAC address (in XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX or XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX format) of the AP to be added to either the rogue AP or friendly AP list. The no command removes the entry.
description2	Sets the description of the AP. You may use 1-60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.

The following table describes the commands available for rogue AP detection. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 59 Command Summary: Rogue AP Detection

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`rogue-ap detection`	Enters sub-command mode for rogue AP detection.
`[no] activate`	Activates rogue AP detection. Use the no parameter to deactivate rogue AP detection.

Table 59 Command Summary: Rogue AP Detection (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] ap-mode detection activate`	Sets the Zyxel Device to detect Rogue APs in the network. Use the `no` parameter to disable rogue AP detection.
`detect interval <10..1440>`	Sets the time interval (in seconds) at which the Zyxel Device scans for rogues APs.
`friendly-ap ap_mac description2`	Sets the device that owns the specified MAC address as a friendly AP. You can also assign a description to this entry on the friendly AP list.
`no friendly-ap ap_mac`	Removes the device that owns the specified MAC address from the friendly AP list.
`rogue-ap ap_mac description2`	Sets the device that owns the specified MAC address as a rogue AP. You can also assign a description to this entry on the rogue AP list.
`no rogue-ap ap_mac`	Removes the device that owns the specified MAC address from the rogue AP list.
`[no] rogue-rule {hidden-ssid|ssid-keyword|weak-security}`	Specifies the characteristic(s) an AP should have for the Zyxel Device to classify it as a Rogue AP. Use the `no` parameter to remove the classification rule.
`[no] rogue-rule keyword <ssid>`	Adds an SSID Keyword. Use the `no` parameter to remove the SSID keyword.
`exit`	Exits configuration mode for rogue AP detection.
`show rogue-ap detection keyword list`	Displays the SSID keyword(s) an AP should have for the Zyxel Device to rule it as a Rogue AP.
`show rogue-ap detection monitoring`	Displays a table of detected APs and information about them, such as their MAC addresses, when they were last seen, and their SSIDs, to name a few.
`show rogue-ap detection list {rogue|friendly|all}`	Displays the specified rogue/friendly/all AP list.
`show rogue-ap detection status`	Displays whether rogue AP detection is on or off.
`show rogue-ap detection info`	Displays a summary of the number of detected devices from the following categories: rogue, friendly, ad-hoc, unclassified, and total.

13.2.1 Rogue AP Detection Examples

This example sets the device associated with MAC address 00:13:49:11:11:11 as a rogue AP, and the device associated with MAC address 00:13:49:11:11:22 as a friendly AP. It then removes MAC address from the rogue AP list with the assumption that it was misidentified.

```
Router(config)# rogue-ap detection
Router(config-detection)# rogue-ap 00:13:49:11:11:11 rogue
Router(config-detection)# friendly-ap 00:13:49:11:11:22 friendly
Router(config-detection)# no rogue-ap 00:13:49:11:11:11
Router(config-detection)# exit
```

This example displays the rogue AP detection list.

```
Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection list rogue
no.   mac               description
contain
================================================================================
1    00:13:49:18:15:5A
0
```

This example shows the friendly AP detection list.

```
Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection list friendly
no.   mac                 description
================================================================================
1     11:11:11:11:11:11   third floor
2     00:13:49:11:22:33
3     00:13:49:00:00:05
4     00:13:49:00:00:01
5     00:0D:0B:CB:39:33   dept1
```

This example shows the combined rogue and friendly AP detection list.

```
Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection list all
no.   role         mac                 description
================================================================================
1     friendly-ap  11:11:11:11:11:11   third floor
2     friendly-ap  00:13:49:11:22:33
3     friendly-ap  00:13:49:00:00:05
4     friendly-ap  00:13:49:00:00:01
5     friendly-ap  00:0D:0B:CB:39:33   dept1
6     rogue-ap     00:13:49:18:15:5A
```

This example shows both the status of rogue AP detection and the summary of detected APs.

```
Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection status
rogue-ap detection status: on

Router(config)# show rogue-ap detection info
rogue ap: 1
friendly ap: 4
adhoc: 4
unclassified ap: 0
total devices: 0
```

CHAPTER 14
Wireless Frame Capture

This chapter shows you how to configure and use wireless frame capture on the Zyxel Device.

14.1 Wireless Frame Capture Overview

Troubleshooting wireless LAN issues has always been a challenge. Wireless sniffer tools like Ethereal can help capture and decode packets of information, which can then be analyzed for debugging. It works well for local data traffic, but if your devices are spaced increasingly farther away then it often becomes correspondingly difficult to attempt remote debugging. Complicated wireless packet collection is arguably an arduous and perplexing process. The wireless frame capture feature in the Zyxel Device can help.

This chapter describes the wireless frame capture commands, which allows a network administrator to capture wireless traffic information and download it to an Ethereal/Tcpdump compatible format packet file for analysis.

14.2 Wireless Frame Capture Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 60 Input Values for Wireless Frame Capture Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ip_address	The IP address of the Access Point (AP) that you want to monitor. Enter a standard IPv4 IP address (for example, 192.168.1.2).
mon_file_size	The size (in kbytes) of file to be captured. It stops the capture and generates the capture file when either it reaches this size or the total combined size of all files in the directory reaches the maximum size which is 50 megabytes (51200 kbytes).
file_name	The file name prefix for each captured file. The default prefix is monitor while the default file name is monitor.dump. You can use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores or dashes but the first character cannot be a number. This string is case sensitive.

The following table describes the commands available for wireless frame capture. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 61 Command Summary: Wireless Frame Capture

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`frame-capture configure`	Enters sub-command mode for wireless frame capture.
`src-ip add` *`ip_address`*	Sets the IP address of an AP controlled by the Zyxel Device that you want to monitor. You can use this command multiple times to add additional IPs to the monitor list.
`file-prefix` *`file_name`*	Sets the file name prefix for each captured file. Enter up to 31 alphanumeric characters. Spaces and underscores are not allowed.
`files-size` *`mon_file_size`*	Sets the size (in kbytes) of files to be captured.
`exit`	Exits configuration mode for wireless frame capture.
`[no] frame-capture activate`	Starts wireless frame capture. Use the no parameter to turn it off.
`show frame-capture status`	Displays whether frame capture is running or not.
`show frame-capture config`	Displays the frame capture configuration.

14.2.1 Wireless Frame Capture Examples

This example configures the wireless frame capture parameters for an AP located at IP address 192.168.1.2.

```
Router(config)# frame-capture configure
Router(frame-capture)# src-ip add 192.168.1.2
Router(frame-capture)# file-prefix monitor
Router(frame-capture)# files-size 1000
Router(frame-capture)# exit
Router(config)#
```

This example shows frame capture status and configuration.

```
Router(config)# show frame-capture status
capture status: off

Router(config)# show frame-capture config
capture source: 192.168.1.2
file prefix: monitor
file size: 1000
```

CHAPTER 15
Dynamic Channel Selection

This chapter shows you how to configure and use dynamic channel selection on the Zyxel Device.

15.1 DCS Overview

Dynamic Channel Selection (DCS) is a feature that allows an AP to automatically select the radio channel upon which it broadcasts by passively listening to the area around it and determining what channels are currently being broadcast on by other devices.

When numerous APs broadcast within a given area, they introduce the possibility of heightened radio interference, especially if some or all of them are broadcasting on the same radio channel. This can make accessing the network potentially rather difficult for the stations connected to them. If the interference becomes too great, the network administrator must open his AP configuration options and manually change the channel to one that no other AP is using (or at least a channel that has a lower level of interference) in order to give the connected stations a minimum degree of channel interference.

15.2 DCS Commands

See Section 12.2 on page 106 for detailed information about how to configure DCS settings in a radio profile.

The following table describes the commands available for dynamic channel selection. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 62 Command Summary: DCS

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`dcs now`	Has the Zyxel Device perform DCS on 2.4/5/6 GHz bands immediately.
`dcs rand-backoff`	Has the Zyxel Device perform DCS on 2.4/5/6 GHz bands after a random period of waiting time to make sure no other nearby AP is performing DCS simultaneously. The Zyxel Device might wait from 0-10 minutes before performing DCS.

CHAPTER 16
Wireless Load Balancing

This chapter shows you how to configure wireless load balancing.

16.1 Wireless Load Balancing Overview

Wireless load balancing is the process whereby you limit the number of connections allowed on an wireless access point (AP) or you limit the amount of wireless traffic transmitted and received on it. Because there is a hard upper limit on the AP's wireless bandwidth, this can be a crucial function in areas crowded with wireless users. Rather than let every user connect and subsequently dilute the available bandwidth to the point where each connecting device receives a meager trickle, the load balanced AP instead limits the incoming connections as a means to maintain bandwidth integrity.

16.2 Wireless Load Balancing Commands

The following table describes the commands available for wireless load balancing. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 63 Command Summary: Load Balancing

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] load-balancing kickout`	Enables an overloaded AP to disconnect ("kick") idle clients or clients with noticeably weak connections.
`load-balancing mode {station | traffic | smart-classroom}`	Enables load balancing based on either number of stations (also known as WiFi clients) or wireless traffic on an AP. *`station`* or *`traffic`*: once the threshold is crossed (either the maximum station numbers or with network traffic), the Zyxel Device delays association request and authentication request packets from any new station that attempts to make a connection. *`smart-classroom`*: the Zyxel Device ignores association request and authentication request packets from any new station when the maximum number of stations is reached.
`load-balancing max sta <1..127>`	If load balancing by the number of stations/WiFi clients, this sets the maximum number of devices allowed to connect to a load-balanced AP.
`load-balancing traffic level {high | low | medium}`	If load balancing by traffic threshold, this sets the traffic threshold level.

Table 63 Command Summary: Load Balancing (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`load-balancing alpha <1..255>`	Sets the load balancing alpha value. When the AP is balanced, then this setting delays a client's association with it by this number of seconds. Note: This parameter has been optimized for the Zyxel Device and should not be changed unless you have been specifically directed to do so by Zyxel support.
`load-balancing beta <1..255>`	Sets the load balancing beta value. When the AP is overloaded, then this setting delays a client's association with it by this number of seconds. Note: This parameter has been optimized for the Zyxel Device and should not be changed unless you have been specifically directed to do so by Zyxel support.
`load-balancing sigma <51..100>`	Sets the load balancing sigma value. This value is algorithm parameter used to calculate whether an AP is considered overloaded, balanced, or underloaded. It only applies to 'by traffic mode'. Note: This parameter has been optimized for the Zyxel Device and should not be changed unless you have been specifically directed to do so by Zyxel support.
`load-balancing timeout <1..255>`	Sets the length of time that an AP retains load balancing information it receives from other APs within its range.
`load-balancing liInterval <1..255>`	Sets the interval in seconds that each AP communicates with the other APs in its range for calculating the load balancing algorithm. Note: This parameter has been optimized for the Zyxel Device and should not be changed unless you have been specifically directed to do so by Zyxel support.
`load-balancing kickInterval <1..255>`	Enables the kickout feature for load balancing and also sets the kickout interval in seconds. While load balancing is enabled, the AP periodically disconnects stations at intervals equal to this setting. This occurs until the load balancing threshold is no longer exceeded.
`show load-balancing config`	Displays the load balancing configuration.
`show load-balancing loading`	Displays the loading status per radio (underload / balance / overload) when you enable the load balancing function.
`[no] load-balancing activate`	Enables load balancing. Use the no parameter to disable it.

16.2.1 Wireless Load Balancing Examples

The following example shows you how to configure AP load balancing in "by station" mode. The maximum number of stations is set to 1.

```
Router(config)# load-balancing mode station
Router(config)# load-balancing max sta 1
Router(config)# show load-balancing config
load balancing config:
Activate: yes
Kickout: no
Mode: station
Max-sta: 1
Traffic-level: high
Alpha: 5
Beta: 10
Sigma: 60
Timeout: 20
LIInterval: 10
KickoutInterval: 20
```

The following example shows you how to configure AP load balancing in "by traffic" mode. The traffic level is set to low, and "disassociate station" is enabled.

```
Router(config)# load-balancing mode traffic
Router(config)# load-balancing traffic level low
Router(config)# load-balancing kickout
Router(config)# show load-balancing config
load balancing config:
Activate: yes
Kickout: yes
Mode: traffic
Max-sta: 1
Traffic-level: low
Alpha: 5
Beta: 10
Sigma: 60
Timeout: 20
LIInterval: 10
KickoutInterval: 20
```

CHAPTER 17
Bluetooth

This chapter shows you how to configure the iBeacon advertising settings for the Zyxel Device that supports Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE). Bluetooth Low Energy, which is also known as Bluetooth Smart, transmits less data over a shorter distance but consumes less power than classic Bluetooth. Check the feature comparison table in Section 1.2 on page 13 to see which models support the BLE feature.

17.1 Bluetooth Overview

iBeacon is Apple's communication protocol on top of Bluetooth Low Energy wireless technology. Beacons (Bluetooth radio transmitters) or BLE enabled devices broadcast packets to every device around it to announce their presence. Advertising packets contain their iBeacon ID, which consists of the Universally Unique Identifier (UUID), major number, and minor number. These packets also contain a TX (transmit) power measured at a reference point, which is used to approximate a device's distance from the beacon. The UUID can be used to identify a service, a device, a manufacturer or an owner. The 2-byte major number is to identify and distinguish a group, and the 2-byte minor number is to identify and distinguish an individual.

For example, a company can set all its beacons to share the same UUID. The beacons in a particular branch uses the same major number, and each beacon in a branch can have its own minor number.

	COMPANY A		
	BRANCH X		**BRANCH Y**
	BEACON 1	**BEACON 2**	**BEACON 3**
UUID	EBAECFAF-DFE0-4039-BE5A-F030EED4303C		
Major	10	10	20
Minor	1	2	1

Developers can create apps that respond to the iBeacon ID that your Zyxel Device broadcasts. An app that is associated with the Zyxel Device's iBeacon ID can measure the proximity of a customer to a beacon. This app can then push messages or trigger prompts and actions based on this information. This allows you to send highly contextual and highly localized advertisements to customers.

17.2 Bluetooth Commands

The following table describes the commands available for Bluetooth advertising settings. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 64 Bluetooth Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`ble` *`slot_name`*	Enters the Bluetooth sub-command mode for the specified radio on the Zyxel Device.
`ibeacon index <1..5> no activate`	Disables the specified iBeacon ID.
`ibeacon index <1..5> activate`	Enables the specified iBeacon ID.
`ibeacon index <1..5> uuid` *`uuid`* `major <0..65535> minor <0..65535>`	Adds a new iBeacon ID to be included in the Bluetooth advertising packets by specifying the UUID, major number and minor number. UUID: Enter 32 hexadecimal digits in the range of “A-F”, “a-f” and “0-9”, split into five groups separated by hyphens (-). The UUID format is as follows: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx (8-4-4-4-12). Major/minor number: Enter an integer from 0 to 65535.
`show ble advertising`	Displays the Bluetooth advertising settings (beacon IDs) of the Zyxel Device.
`show ble uuid-gen`	Displays the UUID that is automatically generated by the Zyxel Device.
`show ble status`	Displays the Zyxel Device’s Bluetooth status and detailed information.

17.2.1 Bluetooth Commands Example

The following example adds a beacon ID and displays the Bluetooth advertising settings.

```
Router(config)# show ble uuid-gen
UUID: 72F3CCD4-2D00-4158-8BA0-AF1A586E92AD
Router(config)# ble slot1
Router(config-ble-slot)# ibeacon index 1 uuid 72F3CCD4-2D00-4158-8BA0-
AF1A586E92AD major 1 minor 1
Router(config-ble-slot)# ibeacon index 1 activate
Router(config-ble-slot)# exit
Router(config)# show ble advertising
Slot  Index  Activate  UUID                                    Major  Minor
=====================================================================
1     1      1         72F3CCD4-2D00-4158-8BA0-AF1A586E92AD  1      1
1     2      0                                                0      0
1     3      0                                                0      0
1     4      0                                                0      0
1     5      0                                                0      0
Router(config)#
```

CHAPTER 18
Certificates

This chapter explains how to use the certificates.

18.1 Certificates Overview

The Zyxel Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. A certificate contains the certificate owner's identity and public key. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.

A Certification Authority (CA) issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner. There are commercial certification authorities like CyberTrust or VeriSign and government certification authorities. You can use the Zyxel Device to generate certification requests that contain identifying information and public keys and then send the certification requests to a certification authority.

18.2 Certificate Commands

This section describes the commands for configuring certificates.

18.3 Certificates Commands Input Values

The following table explains the values you can input with the `certificate` commands.

Table 65 Certificates Commands Input Values

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
certificate_name	The name of a certificate. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#$%^&()_+[]{}',.=- characters.
cn_address	A common name IP address identifies the certificate's owner. Enter the IP address in dotted decimal notation.
cn_domain_name	A common name domain name identifies the certificate's owner. The domain name is for identification purposes only and can be any string. The domain name can be up to 255 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and periods.
cn_email	A common name e-mail address identifies the certificate's owner. The e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string. The e-mail address can be up to 63 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen, the @ symbol, periods and the underscore.
organizational_unit	Identify the organizational unit or department to which the certificate owner belongs. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore.

Table 65 Certificates Commands Input Values (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
organization	Identify the company or group to which the certificate owner belongs. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore.
country	Identify the nation where the certificate owner is located. You can use up to 31 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, the hyphen and the underscore.
key_length	Enter a number to determine how many bits the key should use (512 to 2048). The longer the key, the more secure it is. A longer key also uses more PKI storage space.
password	When you have the Zyxel Device enroll for a certificate immediately online, the certification authority may want you to include a key (password) to identify your certification request. Use up to 31 of the following characters. a-zA-Z0-9;|`~!@#$%^&*()_+\{}':,./<>=-
ca_name	When you have the Zyxel Device enroll for a certificate immediately online, you must have the certification authority's certificate already imported as a trusted certificate. Specify the name of the certification authority's certificate. It can be up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#$%^&()_+[]{}',.=- characters.
url	When you have the Zyxel Device enroll for a certificate immediately online, enter the IP address (or URL) of the certification authority server. You can use up to 511 of the following characters. a-zA-Z0-9'()+,/:.=?;!*#@$_%-

18.4 Certificates Commands Summary

The following table lists the commands that you can use to display and manage the Zyxel Device's summary list of certificates and certification requests. You can also create certificates or certification requests. Use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode to be able to use these commands.

Table 66 CA Commands Summary

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`ca enroll cmp name` *certificate_name* `cn-type {ip cn` *cn_address*`|fqdn cn` *cn_domain_name*`|mail cn` *cn_email*`} [ou` *organizational_unit*`] [o` *organization*`] [c` *country*`] key-type {rsa|dsa} key-len` *key_length* `num <0..99999999> password` *password* `ca` *ca_name* `url` *url*`;`	Enrolls a certificate with a CA using Certificate Management Protocol (CMP). The certification authority may want you to include a reference number and key (password) to identify your certification request.
`ca enroll scep name` *certificate_name* `cn-type {ip cn` *cn_address*`|fqdn cn` *cn_domain_name*`|mail cn` *cn_email*`} [ou` *organizational_unit*`] [o` *organization*`] [c` *country*`] key-type {rsa|dsa} key-len` *key_length* `password` *password* `ca` *ca_name* `url` *url*	Enrolls a certificate with a CA using Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP). The certification authority may want you to include a key (password) to identify your certification request.
`ca generate pkcs10 name` *certificate_name* `cn-type {ip cn` *cn_address*`|fqdn cn` *cn_domain_name*`|mail cn` *cn_email*`} [ou` *organizational_unit*`] [o` *organization*`] [c` *country*`] key-type {rsa|rsa-sha256|rsa-sha512|dsa|dsa-sha256} key-len` *key_length* `[extend-key {svr-client-ike |svr-client|svr-ike|svr|client-ike|client |ike}]`	Generates a PKCS#10 certification request.

Table 66 CA Commands Summary (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
ca generate pkcs12 name *name* password *password*	Generates a PKCS#12 certificate.
ca generate x509 name *certificate_name* cn-type {ip cn *cn_address*|fqdn cn *cn_domain_name*|mail cn *cn_email*} [ou *organizational_unit*] [o *organization*] [c *country*] key-type {rsa|rsa-sha256|rsa-sha512|dsa|dsa-sha256} key-len *key_length* [extend-key {svr-client-ike |svr-client|svr-ike|svr|client-ike|client |ike}]	Generates a self-signed x509 certificate.
ca rename category {local|remote} *old_name new_name*	Renames a local (my certificates) or remote (trusted certificates) certificate.
ca validation *remote_certificate*	Enters the sub command mode for validation of certificates signed by the specified remote (trusted) certificates.
no ca category {local|remote} *certificate_name*	Deletes the specified local (my certificates) or remote (trusted certificates) certificate.
no ca validation *name*	Removes the validation configuration for the specified remote (trusted) certificate.
show ca category {local|remote} name *certificate_name* certpath	Displays the certification path of the specified local (my certificates) or remote (trusted certificates) certificate.
show ca category {local|remote} [name *certificate_name* format {text|pem}]	Displays a summary of the certificates in the specified category (local for my certificates or remote for trusted certificates) or the details of a specified certificate.
show ca validation name *name*	Displays the validation configuration for the specified remote (trusted) certificate.
show ca spaceusage	Displays the storage space in use by certificates.

18.5 Certificates Commands Examples

The following example creates a self-signed X.509 certificate with IP address 10.0.0.58 as the common name. It uses the RSA key type with a 512 bit key. Then it displays the list of local certificates. Finally it deletes the pkcs12request certification request.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ca generate x509 name test_x509 cn-type ip cn 10.0.0.58 key-
type rsa key-len 512
Router(config)# show ca category local
certificate: default
  type: SELF
  subject: CN=nwa3160-n_00134905820A
  issuer: CN=nwa3160-n_00134905820A
  status: EXPIRED
  ID: nwa3160-n_00134905820A
    type: EMAIL
  valid from: 1970-01-01 02:09:16 GMT
  valid to: 1989-12-27 02:09:16 GMT
Router(config)# no ca category local pkcs12request
```

CHAPTER 19
System

This chapter provides information on the commands that correspond to what you can configure in the system screens.

19.1 System Overview

Use these commands to configure general Zyxel Device information, the system time and the console port connection speed for a terminal emulation program. They also allow you to configure DNS settings and determine which services/protocols can access which Zyxel Device zones (if any) from which computers.

19.2 Host Name Commands

The following table describes the commands available for the hostname and domain name. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 67 Command Summary: Host Name

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] domainname <domain_name>`	Sets the domain name. The `no` command removes the domain name. *domain_name*: This name can be up to 254 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and underscores "_" are accepted.
`[no] hostname <hostname>`	Sets a descriptive name to identify your Zyxel Device. The `no` command removes the host name.
`show fqdn`	Displays the fully qualified domain name.

19.3 Roaming Group Commands

The following table describes the commands available for the roaming group. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 68 Command Summary: Host Name

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] roaming group group_name`	Sets the name of the roaming group to which the Zyxel Device belongs. The 802.11k neighbor list a client requests from the Zyxel Device is generated according to the roaming group and RCPI (Received Channel Power Indicator) value of its neighbor APs. When a client wants to roam from the current AP to another, other APs in the same roaming group or not in a roaming group will be candidates for roaming. Neighbor APs in a different roaming group will be excluded from the 802.11k neighbor lists even when the neighbor AP has the best signal strength. If the Zyxel Device's roaming group is not configured, any neighbor APs can be candidates for roaming. The no command removes the roaming group name. *group_name*: This name can be up to 31 alphanumeric and @# characters. Dashes and underscores are also allowed. The name should start with a letter or digit.
`show roaming group`	Displays the name of the roaming group to which the Zyxel Device belongs.

19.4 Time and Date

For effective scheduling and logging, the Zyxel Device system time must be accurate. There is also a software mechanism to set the time manually or get the current time and date from an external server.

19.4.1 Date/Time Commands

The following table describes the commands available for date and time setup. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 69 Command Summary: Date/Time

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`clock date <yyyy-mm-dd> time <hh:mm:ss>`	Sets the new date in year, month and day format manually and the new time in hour, minute and second format.
`[no] clock daylight-saving`	Enables daylight saving. The no command disables daylight saving.
`[no] clock saving-interval begin {apr|aug|dec|feb|jan|jul|jun|mar|may|nov|oct|sep} {1|2|3|4|last} {fri|mon|sat|sun|thu|tue|wed} hh:mm end {apr|aug|dec|feb|jan|jul|jun|mar|may|nov|oct|sep} {1|2|3|4|last} {fri|mon|sat|sun|thu|tue|wed} hh:mm offset`	Configures the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts and ends. The no command removes the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts and ends. offset: a number from 1 to 5.5 (by 0.5 increments)

Table 69 Command Summary: Date/Time (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`clock time hh:mm:ss`	Sets the new time in hour, minute and second format.
`[no] clock time-zone {-|+hh:mm}`	Sets your time zone. The `no` command removes time zone settings.
`[no] ntp`	Saves your date and time and time zone settings and updates the data and time every 24 hours. The `no` command stops updating the data and time every 24 hours.
`[no] ntp server {fqdn|w.x.y.z}`	Sets the IP address or URL of your NTP time server. The `no` command removes time server information.
`ntp user-define {fqdn|w.x.y.z}`	Sets the IP address or FQDN (Fully Qualified domain name) of your NTP time server in Cloud Managed mode. Use this command to use your own NTP server instead of the Nebula Control Center's NTP server. This command takes priority over the `ntp server {fqdn|w.x.y.z}` command. Note: This command is supported in Cloud Managed mode only.
`ntp sync`	Gets the time and date from a NTP time server.
`show clock date`	Displays the current date of your Zyxel Device.
`show clock status`	Displays your time zone and daylight saving settings.
`show clock time`	Displays the current time of your Zyxel Device.
`show ntp server`	Displays time server settings.

19.5 Console Port Speed

This section shows you how to set the console port speed when you connect to the Zyxel Device via the console port using a terminal emulation program. The following table describes the console port commands. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 70 Command Summary: Console Port Speed

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] console baud baud_rate`	Sets the speed of the console port. The `no` command resets the console port speed to the default (`115200`). `baud_rate`: 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600 or 115200.
`show console`	Displays console port speed.

19.6 DNS Overview

DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a machine before you can access it.

19.6.1 DNS Commands

The following table identifies the values required for many of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 71 Input Values for General DNS Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
address_object	The name of the IP address (group) object. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
interface_name	The name of the interface. Ethernet interface: ge*x*, *x* = 1 - N, where N equals the highest numbered Ethernet interface for your Zyxel Device model. VLAN interface: vlan*x*, *x* = 0 - 511.

The following table describes the commands available for DNS. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 72 Command Summary: DNS

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] ip dns server a-record` *`fqdn w.x.y.z`*	Sets an A record that specifies the mapping of a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) to an IP address. The `no` command deletes an A record.
`ip dns server cache-flush`	Clears the DNS server cache.
`[no] ip dns server mx-record` *`domain_name`* `{`*`w.x.y.z`*`|`*`fqdn`*`}`	Sets a MX record that specifies a mail server that is responsible for handling the mail for a particular domain. The `no` command deletes a MX record.
`ip dns server rule {<1..32>|append|insert <1..32>} access-group {ALL|`*`profile_name`*`} zone {ALL|`*`profile_name`*`} action {accept|deny}`	Sets a service control rule for DNS requests.
`ip dns server rule move <1..32> to <1..32>`	Changes the number of a service control rule.
`ip dns server zone-forwarder {<1..32>|append|insert <1..32>} {`*`domain_zone_name`*`|*} user-defined` *`w.x.y.z`* `[private | interface {`*`interface_name`*` | auto}]`	Sets a domain zone forwarder record that specifies a DNS server's IP address. `private | interface`: Use `private` if the Zyxel Device connects to the DNS server through a VPN tunnel. Otherwise, use the `interface` command to set the interface through which the Zyxel Device sends DNS queries to a DNS server. The `auto` means any interface that the Zyxel Device uses to send DNS queries to a DNS server according to the routing rule.
`ip dns server zone-forwarder move <1..32> to <1..32>`	Changes the index number of a zone forwarder record.
`no ip dns server rule <1..32>`	Deletes a service control rule.

Table 72 Command Summary: DNS (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show ip dns server database`	Displays all configured records.
`show ip dns server status`	Displays whether this service is enabled or not.

19.6.2 DNS Command Example

This command sets an A record that specifies the mapping of a fully qualified domain name (www.abc.com) to an IP address (210.17.2.13).

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip dns server a-record www.abc.com 210.17.2.13
```

19.7 Power Mode

This section shows you how to configure and view the Zyxel Device's power settings. The following table describes the power mode commands. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 73 Command Summary: Power Mode

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] override-full-power activate`	Forces the Zyxel Device to draw full power from the power sourcing equipment. This improves performance in cases when a PoE injector that does not support PoE negotiation is used. Use the no command to disable this feature. Note: Only enable this if you are using a passive PoE injector that is not IEEE 802.3at/bt compliant but can still provide full power.
`show override-full-power status`	Displays whether the Zyxel Device is forced to draw full power from the power sourcing equipment.
`show power mode`	Displays the Zyxel Device's power status. **Full** - the Zyxel Device receives power using a power adaptor and/or through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3at PoE plus. **Limited** - the Zyxel Device receives power through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3af PoE even when it is also connected to a power source using a power adaptor. When the Zyxel Device is in limited power mode, the Zyxel Device throughput decreases and has just one transmitting radio chain. It always shows **Full** if the Zyxel Device does not support power detection.

CHAPTER 20
System Remote Management

This chapter shows you how to determine which services/protocols can access which Zyxel Device zones (if any) from which computers.

Note: To allow the Zyxel Device to be accessed from a specified computer using a service, make sure you do not have a service control rule or to-Zyxel Device rule to block that traffic.

20.1 System Timeout

There is a lease timeout for administrators. The Zyxel Device automatically logs you out if the management session remains idle for longer than this timeout period. The management session does not time out when a statistics screen is polling.

Each user is also forced to log in the Zyxel Device for authentication again when the reauthentication time expires.

20.2 HTTP/HTTPS Commands

The following table describes the commands available for HTTP/HTTPS. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 74 Command Summary: HTTP/HTTPS

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] ip http authentication` *`auth_method`*	Sets an authentication method used by the HTTP/HTTPS server. The `no` command resets the authentication method used by the HTTP/HTTPS server to the factory default (`default`). *`auth_method`*: The name of the authentication method. You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
`[no] ip http port <1..65535>`	Sets the HTTP service port number. The `no` command resets the HTTP service port number to the factory default (80).
`[no] ip http secure-port <1..65535>`	Sets the HTTPS service port number. The `no` command resets the HTTPS service port number to the factory default (443).

Table 74 Command Summary: HTTP/HTTPS (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] ip http secure-server`	Enables HTTPS access to the Zyxel Device web configurator. The `no` command disables HTTPS access to the Zyxel Device web configurator.
`[no] ip http secure-server auth-client`	Sets the client to authenticate itself to the HTTPS server. The `no` command sets the client not to authenticate itself to the HTTPS server.
`[no] ip http secure-server cert` *`certificate_name`*	Specifies a certificate used by the HTTPS server. The `no` command resets the certificate used by the HTTPS server to the factory default (`default`). *`certificate_name`*: The name of the certificate. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#$%^&()_+[]{}',.=- characters.
`[no] ip http secure-server force-redirect`	Redirects all HTTP connection requests to a HTTPS URL. The `no` command disables forwarding HTTP connection requests to a HTTPS URL.
`ip http secure-server cipher-suite {`*`cipher_algorithm`*`} [`*`cipher_algorithm`*`] [`*`cipher_algorithm`*`] [`*`cipher_algorithm`*`]`	Sets the encryption algorithms (up to four) that the Zyxel Device uses for the SSL in HTTPS connections and the sequence in which it uses them. The *`cipher_algorithm`* can be any of the following. `rc4`: RC4 (RC4 may impact the Zyxel Device's CPU performance since the Zyxel Device's encryption accelerator does not support it). `aes`: AES `des`: DES `3des`: Triple DES.
`no ip http secure-server cipher-suite {`*`cipher_algorithm`*`}`	Has the Zyxel Device not use the specified encryption algorithm for the SSL in HTTPS connections.
`[no] ip http server`	Allows HTTP access to the Zyxel Device web configurator. The `no` command disables HTTP access to the Zyxel Device web configurator.
`show ip http server status`	Displays HTTP settings.
`show ip http server secure status`	Displays HTTPS settings.

20.2.1 HTTP/HTTPS Command Examples

This command sets an authentication method used by the HTTP/HTTPS server to authenticate the client(s).

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip http authentication Example
```

This following example sets a certificate named MyCert used by the HTTPS server to authenticate itself to the SSL client.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip http secure-server cert MyCert
```

20.3 SSH

Unlike Telnet or FTP, which transmit data in clear text, SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network.

20.3.1 SSH Implementation on the Zyxel Device

Your Zyxel Device supports SSH versions 1 and 2 using RSA authentication and four encryption methods (AES, 3DES, Archfour, and Blowfish). The SSH server is implemented on the Zyxel Device for remote management on port 22 (by default).

20.3.2 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the Zyxel Device over SSH.

20.3.3 SSH Commands

The following table describes the commands available for SSH. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 75 Command Summary: SSH

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] ip ssh server`	Allows SSH access to the Zyxel Device CLI. The no command disables SSH access to the Zyxel Device CLI.
`[no] ip ssh server cert` *`certificate_name`*	Sets a certificate whose corresponding private key is to be used to identify the Zyxel Device for SSH connections. The no command resets the certificate used by the SSH server to the factory default (`default`). *`certificate_name`*: The name of the certificate. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric and ;'~!@#$%^&()_+[]{}',.=- characters.
`[no] ip ssh server port <1..65535>`	Sets the SSH service port number. The no command resets the SSH service port number to the factory default (22).
`[no] ip ssh server v1`	Enables remote management using SSH v1. The no command stops the Zyxel Device from using SSH v1.
`show ip ssh server status`	Displays SSH settings.

20.3.4 SSH Command Examples

This command sets a certificate (Default) to be used to identify the Zyxel Device.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip ssh server cert Default
```

20.4 Configuring FTP

You can upload and download the Zyxel Device's firmware and configuration files using FTP. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

20.4.1 FTP Commands

The following table describes the commands available for FTP. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 76 Command Summary: FTP

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] ip ftp server`	Allows FTP access to the Zyxel Device. The no command disables FTP access to the Zyxel Device.
`[no] ip ftp server cert` *`certificate_name`*	Sets a certificate to be used to identify the Zyxel Device. The no command resets the certificate used by the FTP server to the factory default.
`[no] ip ftp server port <1..65535>`	Sets the FTP service port number. The no command resets the FTP service port number to the factory default (21).
`[no] ip ftp server tls-required`	Allows FTP access over TLS. The no command disables FTP access over TLS.
`show ip ftp server status`	Displays FTP settings.

20.4.2 FTP Command Examples

This command displays FTP settings.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show ip ftp server status
active     : yes
port       : 21
certificate: default
TLS        : no
service control:
No.  Zone                    Address                     Action
================================================================================
```

20.5 SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. Your Zyxel Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the Zyxel Device through the network. The Zyxel Device supports SNMP version one (v1) and version three (v3). Check the feature comparison table in Section 1.2 on page 13 to see which models support the SNMP feature.

20.5.1 Supported MIBs

The Zyxel Device supports MIB II that is defined in RFC-1213 and RFC-1215. The Zyxel Device also supports private MIBs (ZYXEL-ES-SMI.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-CAPWAP.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-COMMON.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-HybridAP.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-ProWLAN.MIB, ZYXEL-ES-RFMGMT.MIB and ZYXEL-ES-WIRELESS.MIB) to collect information about CPU and memory usage. The focus of the MIBs is to let administrators collect statistical data and monitor status and performance. You can download the Zyxel Device's MIBs from www.zyxel.com.

20.5.2 SNMP Traps

The Zyxel Device will send traps to the SNMP manager when any one of the following events occurs:

Table 77 SNMP Traps

OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
Cold Start	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent when the Zyxel Device is turned on or an agent restarts.
linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
authenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	This trap is sent when an SNMP request comes from non-authenticated hosts.

20.5.3 SNMP Commands

The following table describes the commands available for SNMP. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 78 Command Summary: SNMP

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] snmp-server version <v2c|v3>`	Sets the SNMP version support. The no command removes the SNMP version support.
`[no] snmp-server host {`*`fqdn`*`|`*`w.x.y.z`*`} [`*`community_string`*`]`	Sets the domain name or IP address of the host that receives the SNMP notifications. The no command removes the host that receives the SNMP notifications.
`[no] snmp-server enable traps {wireless|capwap}`	Sets the trap control to receive the wireless/capwap trap notifications. The no command removes the wireless/capwap trap notifications.
`snmp-server v3user username <`*`username`*`> authentication <none|MD5|SHA> privacy <none|DES|AES> privilege <ro|rw>`	Sets the SNMPv3 user account and its privilege of read-only (ro) or read-write (rw) access.
`no snmp-server v3user username <username>`	The no command removes the SNMPv3 user account.
`show snmp status`	Displays SNMP settings.
`show snmp-server v3user status`	Displays SNMPv3 user status.
`[no] snmp-server`	Allows SNMP access to the Zyxel Device. The no command disables SNMP access to the Zyxel Device.

Table 78 Command Summary: SNMP (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] snmp-server community` *`community_string`* `{ro|rw}`	Sets the password for read-only (ro) or read-write (rw) access. Enters up to 63 single-byte characters, including 0-9a-zA-Z._. The first character cannot be a period (.). The `no` command resets the password for read-only (`ro`) or read-write (`rw`) access to the default.
`[no] snmp-server contact` *`description`*	Sets the contact information (of up to 60 characters) for the person in charge of the Zyxel Device. The `no` command removes the contact information for the person in charge of the Zyxel Device.
`[no] snmp-server enable {informs|traps}`	Enables all SNMP notifications (informs or traps). The `no` command disables all SNMP notifications (informs or traps).
`[no] snmp-server location` *`description`*	Sets the geographic location (of up to 60 characters) for the Zyxel Device. The `no` command removes the geographic location for the Zyxel Device.
`[no] snmp-server port <1..65535>`	Sets the SNMP service port number. The `no` command resets the SNMP service port number to the factory default (`161`).

CHAPTER 21
AAA Server

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the Zyxel Device to use external authentication servers.

21.1 AAA Server Overview

You can use an AAA (Authentication, Authorization, Accounting) server to provide access control to your network.

The following lists the types of authentication server the Zyxel Device supports.

- Local user database

  The Zyxel Device uses the built-in local user database to authenticate administrative users logging into the Zyxel Device's Web Configurator or network access users logging into the network through the Zyxel Device. You can also use the local user database to authenticate VPN users.
- Directory Service (LDAP/AD)

  LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol)/AD (Active Directory) is a directory service that is both a directory and a protocol for controlling access to a network. The directory consists of a database specialized for fast information retrieval and filtering activities. You create and store user profile and login information on the external server.
- RADIUS

  RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) authentication is a popular protocol used to authenticate users by means of an external or built-in RADIUS server. RADIUS authentication allows you to validate a large number of users from a central location.

21.2 Authentication Server Command Summary

This section describes the commands for authentication server settings.

21.2.1 Radius-Server Commands

The following table lists the `radius-server` commands you use to set the default RADIUS server.

Table 79 radius-server Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show radius-server`	Displays the default RADIUS server settings.
`[no] radius-server host` *`radius_server`* `auth-port` *`auth_port`*	Sets the RADIUS server address and service port number. Enter the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) or the domain name of a RADIUS server. The `no` command clears the settings.

Table 79 radius-server Commands (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
[no] radius-server key *secret*	Sets a password (up to 15 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the RADIUS server and the Zyxel Device. The no command clears this setting.
[no] radius-server timeout *time*	Sets the search timeout period (in seconds). Enter a number between 1 and 300. The no command clears this setting.

21.2.2 Radius-Server Command Example

The following example sets the secret key and timeout period of the default RADIUS server (172.23.10.100) to "87643210" and 80 seconds.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# radius-server host 172.23.10.100 auth-port 1812
Router(config)# radius-server key 876543210
Router(config)# radius-server timeout 80
Router(config)# show radius-server
host               : 172.23.10.100
authentication port: 1812
key                : 876543210
timeout            : 80
Router(config)#
```

21.2.3 AAA Group Server AD Commands

The following table lists the `aaa group server ad` commands you use to configure a group of AD servers.

Table 80 aaa group server ad Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
clear aaa group server ad [*group-name*]	Deletes all AD server groups or the specified AD server group. Note: You can NOT delete a server group that is currently in use.
show aaa group server ad *group-name*	Displays the specified AD server group settings.
[no] aaa group server ad *group-name*	Sets a descriptive name for an AD server group. Use this command to enter the sub-command mode. The no command deletes the specified server group.
aaa group server ad rename *group-name group-name*	Changes the descriptive name for an AD server group.
aaa group server ad *group-name*	Enter the sub-command mode to configure an AD server group.
[no] server alternative-cn-identifier *uid*	Sets the second type of identifier that the users can use to log in if any. For example "name" or "e-mail address". The no command clears this setting.
[no] server basedn *basedn*	Sets the base DN to point to the AD directory on the AD server group. The no command clears this setting.
[no] server binddn *binddn*	Sets the user name the Zyxel Device uses to log into the AD server group. The no command clears this setting.

Table 80 aaa group server ad Commands (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] server cn-identifier uid`	Sets the user name the Zyxel Device uses to log into the AD server group. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server description description`	Sets the descriptive information for the AD server group. You can use up to 60 printable ASCII characters. The no command clears the setting.
`[no] server group-attribute group-attribute`	Sets the name of the attribute that the Zyxel Device is to check to determine to which group a user belongs. The value for this attribute is called a group identifier; it determines to which group a user belongs. You can add ext-group-user user objects to identify groups based on these group identifier values. For example you could have an attribute named “memberOf” with values like “sales”, “RD”, and “management”. Then you could also create an ext-group-user user object for each group. One with “sales” as the group identifier, another for “RD” and a third for “management”. The no command clears the setting.
`[no] server host ad_server`	Enter the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) or the domain name of an AD server to add to this group. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server password password`	Sets the bind password (up to 15 alphanumerical characters). The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server domain-auth activate`	Activates server domain authentication. The no parameter deactivates it.
`server domain-auth username [username] password [password]`	Sets the user name and password for domain authentication.
`server domain-auth realm [realm]`	Sets the realm for domain authentication.
`[no] server port port_no`	Sets the AD port number. Enter a number between 1 and 65535. The default is 389. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server search-time-limit time`	Sets the search timeout period (in seconds). Enter a number between 1 and 300. The no command clears this setting and set this to the default setting of 5 seconds.
`[no] server ssl`	Enables the Zyxel Device to establish a secure connection to the AD server. The no command disables this feature.

21.2.4 AAA Group Server LDAP Commands

The following table lists the `aaa group server ldap` commands you use to configure a group of LDAP servers.

Table 81 aaa group server ldap Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`clear aaa group server ldap [group-name]`	Deletes all LDAP server groups or the specified LDAP server group. Note: You can NOT delete a server group that is currently in use.
`show aaa group server ldap group-name`	Displays the specified LDAP server group settings.

Table 81 aaa group server ldap Commands (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] aaa group server ldap group-name`	Sets a descriptive name for an LDAP server group. Use this command to enter the sub-command mode. The no command deletes the specified server group.
`aaa group server ldap rename group-name group-name`	Changes the descriptive name for an LDAP server group.
`aaa group server ldap group-name`	Enter the sub-command mode.
`[no] server alternative-cn-identifier uid`	Sets the second type of identifier that the users can use to log in if any. For example “name” or “e-mail address”. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server basedn basedn`	Sets the base DN to point to the LDAP directory on the LDAP server group. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server binddn binddn`	Sets the user name the Zyxel Device uses to log into the LDAP server group. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server cn-identifier uid`	Sets the user name the Zyxel Device uses to log into the LDAP server group. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server description description`	Sets the descriptive information for the LDAP server group. You can use up to 60 printable ASCII characters. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server group-attribute group-attribute`	Sets the name of the attribute that the Zyxel Device is to check to determine to which group a user belongs. The value for this attribute is called a group identifier; it determines to which group a user belongs. You can add ext-group-user user objects to identify groups based on these group identifier values. For example you could have an attribute named “memberOf” with values like “sales”, “RD”, and “management”. Then you could also create an ext-group-user user object for each group. One with “sales” as the group identifier, another for “RD” and a third for “management”. The no command clears the setting.
`[no] server host ldap_server`	Enter the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) or the domain name of an LDAP server to add to this group. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server password password`	Sets the bind password (up to 15 characters). The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server port port_no`	Sets the LDAP port number. Enter a number between 1 and 65535. The default is 389. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server search-time-limit time`	Sets the search timeout period (in seconds). Enter a number between 1 and 300. The no command clears this setting and set this to the default setting of 5 seconds.
`[no] server ssl`	Enables the Zyxel Device to establish a secure connection to the LDAP server. The no command disables this feature.

21.2.5 AAA Group Server Radius Commands

The following table lists the `aaa group server radius` commands you use to configure a group of RADIUS servers.

Table 82 aaa group server radius Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`clear aaa group server radius` *group-name*	Deletes all RADIUS server groups or the specified RADIUS server group. Note: You can NOT delete a server group that is currently in use.
`show aaa group server radius` *group-name*	Displays the specified RADIUS server group settings.
`[no] aaa group server radius` *group-name*	Sets a descriptive name for the RADIUS server group. The no command deletes the specified server group.
`aaa group server radius rename` {*group-name-old*} *group-name-new*	Sets the server group name.
`aaa group server radius` *group-name*	Enter the sub-command mode.
`[no] server description` *description*	Sets the descriptive information for the RADIUS server group. You can use up to 60 printable ASCII characters. The no command clears the setting.
`[no] server group-attribute` <1-255>	Sets the value of an attribute that the Zyxel Device is used to determine to which group a user belongs. This attribute's value is called a group identifier. You can add **ext-group-user** user objects to identify groups based on different group identifier values. For example, you could configure attributes 1,10 and 100 and create a **ext-group-user** user object for each of them. The no command clears the setting.
`[no] server host` *radius_server*	Enter the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) or the domain name of a RADIUS server to add to this server group. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server key` *secret*	Sets a password (up to 15 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the RADIUS server(s) and the Zyxel Device. The no command clears this setting.
`[no] server timeout` *time*	Sets the search timeout period (in seconds). Enter a number between 1 and 300. The no command clears this setting and set this to the default setting of 5 seconds.

21.2.6 AAA Group Server Command Example

The following example creates a RADIUS server group with two members and sets the secret key to "12345678" and the timeout to 100 seconds. Then this example also shows how to view the RADIUS group settings.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# aaa group server radius RADIUSGroup1
Router(group-server-radius)# server host 192.168.1.100 auth-port 1812
Router(group-server-radius)# server host 172.16.12.100 auth-port 1812
Router(group-server-radius)# server key 12345678
Router(group-server-radius)# server timeout 100
Router(group-server-radius)# exit
Router(config)# show aaa group server radius RADIUSGroup1
key                : 12345678
timeout            : 100
description        :
group attribute    : 11

No.  Host Member                                                    Auth. Port

==========================================================================
1    192.168.1.100                                                    1812

2    172.16.12.100                                                    1812
```

CHAPTER 22
Authentication Objects

This chapter shows you how to select different authentication methods for user authentication using the AAA servers or the internal user database.

22.1 Authentication Objects Overview

After you have created the AAA server objects, you can specify the authentication objects (containing the AAA server information) that the Zyxel Device uses to authenticate users (such as managing through HTTP/HTTPS or Captive Portal).

22.2 AAA Authentication Commands

The following table lists the `aaa authentication` commands you use to configure an authentication profile.

Table 83 aaa authentication Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`aaa authentication rename` *`profile-name-old profile-name-new`*	Changes the profile name. *`profile-name`*: You may use 1-31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-), but the first character cannot be a number. This value is case-sensitive.
`clear aaa authentication` *`profile-name`*	Deletes all authentication profiles or the specified authentication profile. Note: You can NOT delete a profile that is currently in use.
`show aaa authentication {`*`group-name`*`|default}`	Displays the specified authentication server profile settings.
`[no] aaa authentication` *`profile-name`*	Sets a descriptive name for the authentication profile. The `no` command deletes a profile.
`[no] aaa authentication {`*`profile-name`*`} local`	Creates an authentication profile to authenticate users using the local user database

Table 83 aaa authentication Commands (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
[no] aaa authentication default *member1* [*member2*] [*member3*] [*member4*]	Sets the default profile to use the authentication method(s) in the order specified. *member* = group radius, or local. Note: You must specify at least one member for each profile. Each type of member can only be used once in a profile. The no command clears the specified authentication method(s) for the profile.
[no] aaa authentication *profile-name member1* [*member2*] [*member3*] [*member4*]	Sets the profile to use the authentication method(s) in the order specified. *member* = group radius, or local. Note: You must specify at least one member for each profile. Each type of member can only be used once in a profile. The no command clears the specified authentication method(s) for the profile.

22.2.1 AAA Authentication Command Example

The following example creates an authentication profile to authenticate users using the local user database.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# aaa authentication LDAPuser group local
Router(config)# show aaa authentication LDAPuser
No.  Method
================================================================================
0    ldap
1    local
Router(config)#
```

22.3 Test AAA Command

The following table lists the `test aaa` command you use to teat a user account on an authentication server.

Table 84 test aaa Command

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
test aaa {server|secure-server} {ad|ldap} host {*hostname*|*ipv4-address*} [host {*hostname*|*ipv4-address*}] port <1..65535> base-dn *base-dn-string* [bind-dn *bind-dn-string* password *password*] login-name-attribute *attribute* [alternative-login-name-attribute *attribute*] account *account-name*	Tests whether a user account exists on the specified authentication server.

22.3.1 Test a User Account Command Example

The following example shows how to test whether a user account named userABC exists on the AD authentication server which uses the following settings:

- IP address: 172.16.50.1
- Port: 389
- Base-dn: DC=Zyxel,DC=com
- Bind-dn: zyxel\engineerABC
- Password: abcdefg
- Login-name-attribute: sAMAccountName

The result shows the account exists on the AD server. Otherwise, the Zyxel Device returns an error.

```
Router> test aaa server ad host 172.16.50.1 port 389 base-dn DC=Zyxel,DC=com
bind-dn zyxel\engineerABC password abcdefg login-name-attribute
sAMAccountName account userABC

dn:: Q049MTIzNzco546L5aOr56uRKSxPVT1XaXRoTWFpbCxEQz1aeVhFTCxEQz1jb20=
objectClass: top
objectClass: person
objectClass: organizationalPerson
objectClass: user
cn:: MTIzNzco546L5aOr56uRKQ==
sn: User
l: 2341100
-------------------------SNIP!-----------------------------------------
```

CHAPTER 23
File Manager

This chapter covers how to work with the Zyxel Device's firmware, certificates, configuration files, packet trace results, shell scripts and temporary files.

23.1 File Directories

The Zyxel Device stores files in the following directories.

Table 85 FTP File Transfer Notes

DIRECTORY	FILE TYPE	FILE NAME EXTENSION
A	Firmware (upload only)	bin
cert	Non-PKCS#12 certificates	cer
conf	Configuration files	conf
packet_trace	Packet trace results (download only)	
script	Shell scripts	.zysh
tmp	Temporary system maintenance files and crash dumps for technical support use (download only)	

A. After you log in through FTP, you do not need to change directories in order to upload the firmware.

23.2 Configuration Files and Shell Scripts Overview

You can store multiple configuration files and shell script files on the Zyxel Device.

When you apply a configuration file, the Zyxel Device uses the factory default settings for any features that the configuration file does not include. Shell scripts are files of commands that you can store on the Zyxel Device and run when you need them. When you run a shell script, the Zyxel Device only applies the commands that it contains. Other settings do not change.

You can edit configuration files or shell scripts in a text editor and upload them to the Zyxel Device. Configuration files use a .conf extension and shell scripts use a .zysh extension.

These files have the same syntax, which is also identical to the way you run CLI commands manually. An example is shown below.

Figure 12 Configuration File / Shell Script: Example

```
## enter configuration mode
configure terminal
# change administrator password
username admin password 4321 user-type admin
#configure default radio profile, change 2GHz channel to 11 & Tx output
power # to 50%
wlan-radio-profile default
2g-channel 11
output-power 50%
exit
write
```

While configuration files and shell scripts have the same syntax, the Zyxel Device applies configuration files differently than it runs shell scripts. This is explained below.

Table 86 Configuration Files and Shell Scripts in the Zyxel Device

Configuration Files (.conf)	Shell Scripts (.zysh)
• Resets to default configuration. • Goes into CLI **Configuration** mode. • Runs the commands in the configuration file.	• Goes into CLI **Privilege** mode. • Runs the commands in the shell script.

You have to run the example in Table 12 on page 166 as a shell script because the first command is run in **Privilege** mode. If you remove the first command, you have to run the example as a configuration file because the rest of the commands are executed in **Configuration** mode. (See Section 2.5 on page 17 for more information about CLI modes.)

23.2.1 Comments in Configuration Files or Shell Scripts

In a configuration file or shell script, use “#” or “!” as the first character of a command line to have the Zyxel Device treat the line as a comment.

Your configuration files or shell scripts can use “exit” or a command line consisting of a single “!” to have the Zyxel Device exit sub command mode.

Note: “exit” or “!'” must follow sub commands if it is to make the Zyxel Device exit sub command mode.

In the following example lines 1 and 2 are comments. Line 5 exits sub command mode.

```
! this is from Joe
# on 2022/12/05
wlan-ssid-profile default
ssid Joe-AP
qos wmm
security default
!
```

23.2.2 Errors in Configuration Files or Shell Scripts

When you apply a configuration file or run a shell script, the Zyxel Device processes the file line-by-line. The Zyxel Device checks the first line and applies the line if no errors are detected. Then it continues with the next line. If the Zyxel Device finds an error, it stops applying the configuration file or shell script and generates a log.

You can have the Zyxel Device to ignore errors and apply the valid parts of the configuration file every time you upload configuration files or only for the specific file you're uploading.

Use `setenv stop-on-error off` if you want the Zyxel Device to ignore errors and apply the valid parts of the configuration file every time you upload configuration files to the Zyxel Device.

Use `apply /conf/`*`file_name`*`.conf ignore-error`, for example, `apply /conf/ATPConfigFile.conf ignore-error`, to:

- Apply the valid parts of the configuration file.
- Generate error logs for all of the configuration file's errors.

This lets the Zyxel Device apply most of your configuration in the configuration file you just uploaded. You can refer to the logs for what to fix.

Use `apply /conf/`*`file_name`*`.conf ignore-error rollback`, for example, `apply /conf/ATPConfigFile.conf ignore-error rollback`, to:

- Generate error logs for all of the configuration file's errors.
- Start the Zyxel Device with the last fully valid configuration file.

This lets the Zyxel Device apply your current configuration file (usually the **startup-config.conf** file) instead of the configuration file you just uploaded. You can refer to the logs for what to fix.

See the table below for the comparison between these commands.

Table 87 Commands Comparison Table

COMMAND	EFFECTIVE	RESULT
`setenv stop-on-error off`	every time you upload configuration files (until you apply the command setenv stop-on-error on)	• ignore errors • apply the valid parts of the configuration file • generate error logs
`setenv-startup stop-on-error off`	every time the Zyxel Device applies the **startup-config.conf** configuration files (until you apply the command setenv-startup stop-on-error on)	• ignore errors • apply the valid parts of the **startup-config.conf** file • generate error logs
`apply /conf/file_name.conf ignore-error`	• only for the specific file • once	• ignore errors • apply the valid parts of the configuration file • generate error logs
`apply /conf/file_name.conf ignore-error rollback`	• only for the specific file • once	• ignore errors • apply the last applied configuration file • generate error logs

23.2.3 Zyxel Device Configuration File Details

You can store multiple configuration files on the Zyxel Device. You can also have the Zyxel Device use a different configuration file without the Zyxel Device restarting.

- When you first receive the Zyxel Device, it uses the **system-default.conf** configuration file of default settings.
- When you change the configuration, the Zyxel Device creates a **startup-config.conf** file of the current configuration.
- The Zyxel Device checks the **startup-config.conf** file for errors when it restarts. If there is an error in the **startup-config.conf** file, the Zyxel Device copies the **startup-config.conf** configuration file to the **startup-config-bad.conf** configuration file and tries the existing **lastgood.conf** configuration file.
- When the Zyxel Device reboots, if the **startup-config.conf** file passes the error check, the Zyxel Device keeps a copy of the **startup-config.conf** file as the **lastgood.conf** configuration file for you as a back up file. If you upload and apply a configuration file with an error, you can apply **lastgood.conf** to return to a valid configuration.

23.2.4 Configuration File Flow at Restart

If there is not a **startup-config.conf** when you restart the Zyxel Device (whether through a management interface or by physically turning the power off and back on), the Zyxel Device uses the **system-default.conf** configuration file with the Zyxel Device's default settings.

If there is a **startup-config.conf**, the Zyxel Device checks it for errors and applies it. If there are no errors, the Zyxel Device uses it and copies it to the **lastgood.conf** configuration file. If there is an error, the Zyxel Device generates a log and copies the **startup-config.conf** configuration file to the **startup-config-bad.conf** configuration file and tries the existing **lastgood.conf** configuration file. If there isn't a **lastgood.conf** configuration file or it also has an error, the Zyxel Device applies the **system-default.conf** configuration file.

You can change the way the **startup-config.conf** file is applied. Include the `setenv-startup stop-on-error off` command. The Zyxel Device ignores any errors in the **startup-config.conf** file and applies all of the valid commands. The Zyxel Device still generates a log for any errors.

23.2.5 Sensitive Data Protection

The Zyxel Device by default encrypts local admin and user account passwords for web configurator and CLI.

Enable **Sensitive Data Protection** to have the Zyxel Device use a private key to encrypt local admin and user account passwords for web configurator and CLI.

Note: You can only upload configuration files using FTP that are using the current private key of the Zyxel Device.

The following examples describe the situations you might come across using **Sensitive Data Protection**.

Example 1:

1. Download a configuration file (file1).
2. Enable **Sensitive Data Protection**.

3 Create a private key (key1).

4 When you upload file1 to the Zyxel Device through the Zyxel Device web configurator, you do not need to enter the private key (key1). Configuration file1 is not encrypted by the private key (key1).

Example2:

1 Enable **Sensitive Data Protection**.

2 Create an private key (key1).

3 Download a configuration file (file2).

4 You must use key1 to upload file2 to the Zyxel Device because file2 is encrypted by key1.

Example 3:

1 Change the private key from key1 to key2.

2 Download another configuration file (file3).

3 You must use key2 to upload file3 to the Zyxel Device.

Note: You must still use key1 to upload file2 to the Zyxel Device. Make a note of the key to use when you change the private key and then download a configuration file.

Example 4:

1 Enable **Sensitive Data Protection** on Zyxel Device1 and create a private key.

2 Download a configuration file from Zyxel Device1.

3 You must upload this configuration file using the private key you created on Zyxel Device1 to Zyxel Device2 even if **Sensitive Data Protection** is not enabled on Zyxel Device2.

23.3 File Manager Commands Input Values

The following table explains the values you can input with the file manager commands.

Table 88 File Manager Command Input Values

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
file_name	The name of a file. Use up to 25 characters (including a-zA-Z0-9;'~!@#$%^&()_+[]{}',.=-).
encryption_key	The encryption key the Zyxel Device uses to encrypt management passwords. Use 4 to 8 characters (including a-zA-Z0-9; `~!@#$%^&*()_-+={}|\;:'<,>./]|).

23.4 File Manager Commands Summary

The following table lists the commands that you can use for file management.

Table 89 File Manager Commands Summary

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`apply /conf/file_name.conf [ignore-error] [rollback]`	Has the Zyxel Device use a specific configuration file. You must still use the `write` command to save your configuration changes to the flash (“non-volatile” or “long term”) memory. Use this command without specify both `ignore-error` and `rollback`: this is not recommended because it would leave the rest of the configuration blank. If the interfaces were not configured before the first error, the console port may be the only way to access the device. Use `ignore-error` without `rollback`: this applies the valid parts of the configuration file and generates error logs for all of the configuration file’s errors. This lets the Zyxel Device apply most of your configuration and you can refer to the logs for what to fix. Use both `ignore-error` and `rollback`: this applies the last applied configuration file (usually the **startup-config.config** file), generates error logs for all of the configuration file’s errors. Use `rollback` without `ignore-error`: this gets the Zyxel Device started with a fully valid configuration file as quickly as possible. You can use the “`apply /conf/system-default.conf`” command to reset the Zyxel Device to go back to its system defaults.
`copy {/cert | /conf | /idp | /packet_trace | /script | /tmp}file_name-a.conf {/cert | /conf | /idp | /packet_trace | /script | /tmp}/file_name-b.conf`	Saves a duplicate of a file on the Zyxel Device from the source file name to the target file name. Specify the directory and file name of the file that you want to copy and the directory and file name to use for the duplicate. Always copy the file into the same directory.
`copy running-config startup-config`	Saves your configuration changes to the flash (“non-volatile” or “long term”) memory. The Zyxel Device immediately uses configuration changes made via commands, but if you do not use this command or the write command, the changes will be lost when the Zyxel Device restarts.
`copy running-config /conf/file_name.conf`	Saves a duplicate of the configuration file that the Zyxel Device is currently using. You specify the file name to which to copy.
`delete {/cert | /conf | /idp | /packet_trace | /script | /tmp}/file_name`	Removes a file. Specify the directory and file name of the file that you want to delete.
`dir {/cert | /conf | /idp | /packet_trace | /script | /tmp}`	Displays the list of files saved in the specified directory.

Table 89 File Manager Commands Summary (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`rename {/cert | /conf | /idp | /packet_trace | /script | /tmp}/old-file_name {/cert | /conf | /idp | /packet_trace | /script | /tmp}/new-file_name`	Changes the name of a file. Specify the directory and file name of the file that you want to rename. Then specify the directory again followed by the new file name.
`rename /script/old-file_name /script/new-file_name`	Changes the name of a shell script.
`run /script/file_name.zysh`	Has the Zyxel Device execute a specific shell script file. You must still use the `write` command to save your configuration changes to the flash (“non-volatile” or “long term”) memory.
`show running-config`	Displays the settings of the configuration file that the system is using.
`setenv stop-on-error {on | off}`	The `on` command has the Zyxel Device stop applying a configuration file when detecting any error in the configuration file. The Zyxel Device will leave the rest of the configuration as your previous configuration. The `off` command has the Zyxel Device ignore any errors in configuration files and apply all of the valid commands.
`setenv-startup stop-on-error {on | off}`	The `on` command has the Zyxel Device stop applying the startup-config.conf file when there is any error. The Zyxel Device will then try to apply the lastgood.conf file. The `off` command has the Zyxel Device ignore any errors in the startup-config.conf file and apply all of the valid commands.
`show setenv-startup`	Displays whether or not the Zyxel Device is set to ignore any errors in the startup-config.conf file and apply all of the valid commands.
`[no] private-encryption-key {encryption_key}`	Enables sensitive data protection on the Zyxel Device and sets the encryption key. You need this key to upload configuration files. Write down the key you set and keep it in a safe place. Use the `[no] private-encryption-key` command to disable sensitive data protection.
`show private-encryption-key status`	Displays whether sensitive data protection is enabled on the Zyxel Device.
`cloud-firmware check`	Displays if a new firmware is available for the Zyxel Device on the cloud server.
`cloud-firmware upgrade`	Upgrades the Zyxel Device to the latest firmware available. Cloud-firmware upgrade involves downloading a new firmware from the cloud server and then uploading it to the Zyxel Device.
`cloud-firmware upgrade abort`	Stops the Zyxel Device from upgrading to the latest firmware.

Table 89 File Manager Commands Summary (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show cloud-firmware {version| upgrade status}`	Displays: • Status: Displays the cloud firmware upgrade status - `Success`, `Fail` and `Downloading`. • Result: Displays the detailed information of the firmware upgrade status. See Cloud-Firmware Upgrade Status for more information. • Latest version: Displays the latest firmware version available on the cloud server. To find out the latest version, use the `cloud-firmware check` command to retrieve information from the cloud server. Note: To see the current firmware version on your Zyxel Device, use the `show version` command.
`write`	Saves your configuration changes to the flash ("non-volatile" or "long term") memory. The Zyxel Device immediately uses configuration changes made via commands, but if you do not use the `write` command, the changes will be lost when the Zyxel Device restarts.

23.5 File Manager Command Examples

Configuration Backup

This example saves a back up of the current configuration before applying a shell script file.

```
Router(config)# copy running-config /conf/backup.conf
Router(config)# run /script/mac_acl_setup.zysh
```

Cloud-Firmware Upgrade Status

The following command displays the latest firmware version available for download to the Zyxel Device from the cloud server.

```
Router(config)# show cloud-firmware version
Status: Success
Result: Success
Latest Version: V6.60
```

The following command indicates the current firmware version on your Zyxel Device is up-to-date.

```
Router(config)# show cloud-firmware version
Status: Success
Result: Current firmware is up-to-date.
Latest Version: V6.60
```

The following command indicates a firmware download failure due to an Internet error. Please check your Internet access.

```
Router(config)# show cloud-firmware version
Status: Fail
Result: Firmware download failed. Please check your device can access the
Internet.
Latest Version: N/A
```

The following command indicates a firmware download failure due to a DNS problem. Please check your DNS settings.

```
Router(config)# show cloud-firmware version
Status: Fail
Result: Firmware download failed. Please check your device’s DNS settings.
Latest Version: N/A
```

The following command indicates a firmware download failure. Download the new firmware manually from the Zyxel website. Then, go to the **Maintenance** > **File Manager** > **Firmware Package** screen in the Web Configurator to upload the new firmware.

```
Router(config)# show cloud-firmware version
Status: Fail
Result: Firmware download failed. Please download the firmware manually.
Latest Version: N/A
```

The following command indicates your Zyxel Device is downloading new firmware from the cloud server. The download progress is 22%.

```
Router(config)# show cloud-firmware upgrade status
Status: Downloading
Result: 22.00%
```

The following command indicates you have successfully downloaded the new firmware to your Zyxel Device.

```
Router(config)# show cloud-firmware upgrade status
Status: Success
Result: 100.00%
```

23.6 FTP File Transfer

You can use FTP to transfer files to and from the Zyxel Device for advanced maintenance and support.

23.6.1 Command Line FTP File Upload

1 Connect to the Zyxel Device.

2 Enter “bin” to set the transfer mode to binary.

3 You can upload the firmware after you log in through FTP. To upload other files, use “cd” to change to the corresponding directory.

4 Use “put” to transfer files from the computer to the Zyxel Device.[1] For example:

In the conf directory, use "put config.conf today.conf” to upload the configuration file (config.conf) to the Zyxel Device and rename it “today.conf”.

"put 6.60(ABCD.0).bin” transfers the firmware (6.60(ABCD.0).bin) to the Zyxel Device. The Zyxel Device will automatically upgrade its firmware and reboot.

The firmware update can take up to five minutes. Do not turn off or reset the Zyxel Device while the firmware update is in progress! If you lose power during the firmware upload, you may need to refer to Section 23.8 on page 177 to recover the firmware.

23.6.2 Command Line FTP Configuration File Upload Example

The following example transfers a configuration file named tomorrow.conf from the computer and saves it on the Zyxel Device as next.conf.

Note: Uploading a custom signature file named "custom.rules”, overwrites all custom signatures on the Zyxel Device.

Note: The configuration file must use the same sensitive data protection settings as the Zyxel Device. Otherwise, the upload process will fail. See Section 23.2.5 on page 168.

Figure 13 FTP Configuration File Upload Example

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
220 FTP Server [192.168.1.2]
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 Password required for admin.
Password:
230 User admin logged in.
ftp> cd conf
250 CWD command successful
ftp> bin
200 Type set to I
ftp> put tomorrow.conf next.conf
200 PORT command successful
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for next.conf
226-Post action ok!!
226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 20231 bytes sent in 0.00Seconds 20231000.00Kbytes/sec.
```

1. When you upload a custom signature, the Zyxel Device appends it to the existing custom signatures stored in the "custom.rules” file.

23.6.3 Command Line FTP Firmware File Upload Example

The following example uploads firmware files - 610ABVT0b9.bin (incompatible) and 625ABVT0b5.bin (compatible) - from the computer to the Zyxel Device.

Note: You can check and download the firmware compatible with the Zyxel Device at support.zyxel.com.

Note: The Zyxel Device will not upgrade the firmware if the firmware file you upload is incompatible with the Zyxel Device.

Figure 14 Successful FTP Firmware File Upload Example

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
220 FTP Server [192.168.1.2]
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 Password required for admin.
Password:
230 User admin logged in.
ftp> bin
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> put D:\660ABTF0C0.bin
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port 54522
226-File successfully transferred
226-1.214 seconds (measured here), 25.13 Mbytes per second
226-firmware verifying...
226-firmware updating...
226-Please Wait about 5 minutes!!
226-Do not poweroff or reset,
226-system will reboot automatically after finished updating.
226 226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 31996022 bytes sent in 1.19Seconds 26932.68Kbytes/sec.
```

Figure 15 Unsuccessful FTP Firmware File Upload Example

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.2
Connected to 192.168.1.2.
220 FTP Server [192.168.1.2]
User (192.168.1.2:(none)): admin
331 Password required for admin.
Password:
230 User admin logged in.
ftp> bin
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> put D:\660ABTF0C0.bin
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port 54816
226-File successfully transferred
226-1.657 seconds (measured here), 16.28 Mbytes per second
226-firmware verifying...
226 file damaged!!
ftp: 28297684 bytes sent in 1.66Seconds 17026.28Kbytes/sec.
```

23.6.4 Command Line FTP File Download

1. Connect to the Zyxel Device.
2. Enter “bin” to set the transfer mode to binary.
3. Use “cd” to change to the directory that contains the files you want to download.
4. Use “dir” or “ls” if you need to display a list of the files in the directory.
5. Use "get” to download files. For example:

   “get vlan_setup.zysh vlan.zysh” transfers the vlan_setup.zysh configuration file on the Zyxel Device to your computer and renames it “vlan.zysh.”

23.6.5 Command Line FTP Configuration File Download Example

The following example gets a configuration file named today.conf from the Zyxel Device and saves it on the computer as current.conf.

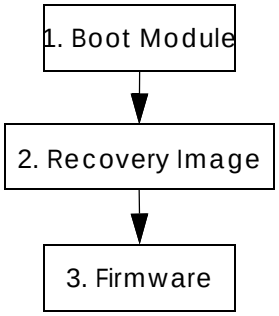
Figure 16 FTP Configuration File Download Example

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220 FTP Server [192.168.1.1]
User (192.168.1.1:(none)): admin
331 Password required for admin.
Password:
230 User admin logged in.
ftp> bin
200 Type set to I
ftp> cd conf
250 CWD command successful
ftp> get today.conf current.conf
200 PORT command successful
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for conf/today.conf
(20220 bytes)
226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 20220 bytes received in 0.03Seconds 652.26Kbytes/sec.
```

23.7 Zyxel Device File Usage at Startup

The Zyxel Device uses the following files at system startup.

Figure 17 Zyxel Device File Usage at Startup



1 The boot module performs a basic hardware test. You cannot restore the boot module if it is damaged. The boot module also checks and loads the recovery image. The Zyxel Device notifies you if the recovery image is damaged.

2 The recovery image checks and loads the firmware. The Zyxel Device notifies you if the firmware is damaged.

23.8 Notification of a Damaged Recovery Image or Firmware

The Zyxel Device's recovery image and/or firmware could be damaged, for example by the power going off during a firmware upgrade. This section describes how the Zyxel Device notifies you of a damaged recovery image or firmware file. Use this section if your device has stopped responding for an extended period of time and you cannot access or ping it. Note that the Zyxel Device does not respond while starting up. It takes less than five minutes to start up with the default configuration, but the start up time increases with the complexity of your configuration.

1 Use a console cable and connect to the Zyxel Device via a terminal emulation program (such as HyperTerminal). Your console session displays the Zyxel Device's startup messages. If you cannot see any messages, check the terminal emulation program's settings (see Section 2.2.1 on page 15) and restart the Zyxel Device.

2 The system startup messages display followed by "Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds."

Note: Do not press any keys at this point. Wait to see what displays next.

Figure 18 System Startup Stopped

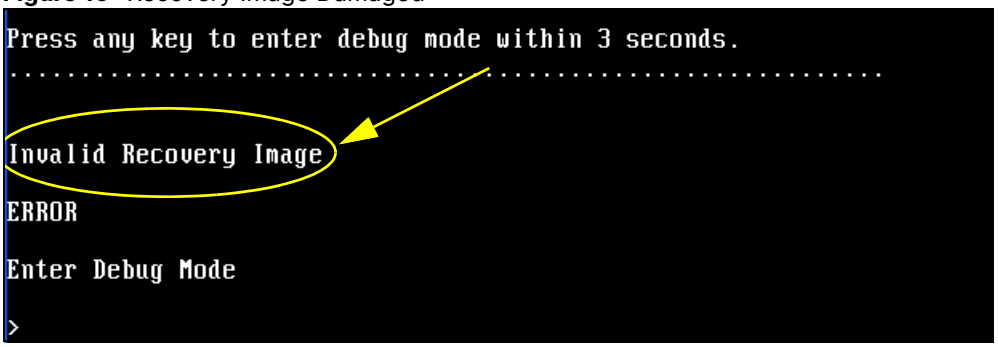
```
BootModule Version: V1.08 | 05/05/2006 11:42:55
DRAM: Size = 510 Mbytes
DRAM POST: Testing:  522240K OK
DRAM Test SUCCESS !

Kernel Version: V2.4.27-XL-2006-05-29 | 2006-05-29 15:23:46
ZLD Version: VZW1050_10_DailyBuild_New | 2006-05-29 15:18:37

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.....
```

3 If the console session displays “Invalid Firmware”, or “Invalid Recovery Image”, or the console freezes at "Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds" for more than one minute, go to Section 23.9 on page 178 to restore the recovery image.

Figure 19 Recovery Image Damaged



4 If “Connect a computer to port 1 and FTP to 192.168.1.1 to upload the new file” displays on the screen, the firmware file is damaged. Use the procedure in Section 23.10 on page 180 to restore it. If the message does not display, the firmware is OK and you do not need to use the firmware recovery procedure.

Figure 20 Firmware Damaged

23.9 Restoring the Recovery Image

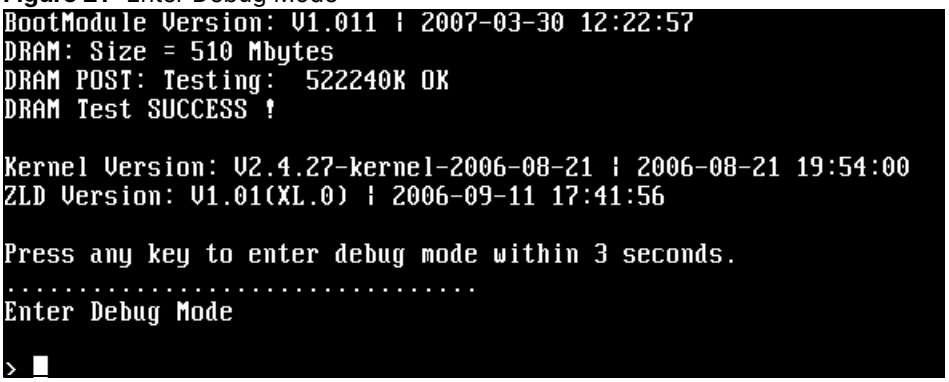
This procedure requires the Zyxel Device’s recovery image. Download the firmware package from www.zyxel.com and unzip it. The recovery image uses a .ri extension, for example, "1.01(XL.0)C0.ri". Do the following after you have obtained the recovery image file.

Note: You only need to use this section if you need to restore the recovery image.

1 Restart the Zyxel Device.

2 When “Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.” displays, press a key to enter debug mode.

Figure 21 Enter Debug Mode



3 Enter `atuk` to initialize the recovery process.If the screen displays “ERROR”, enter `atur` to initialize the recovery process.

Note: You only need to use the `atuk` or `atur` command if the recovery image is damaged.

Figure 22 atuk Command for Restoring the Recovery Image

```
> atuk
This command is for restoring the "recovery image" (xxx.ri).
Use This command only when
1) the console displays "Invalid Recovery Image" or
2) the console freezes at "Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds"
   for more than one minute.

Note:
Please exit this command immediately if you do not need to restore the
"recovery image".

Do you want to start the recovery process (Y/N)? (default N)
```

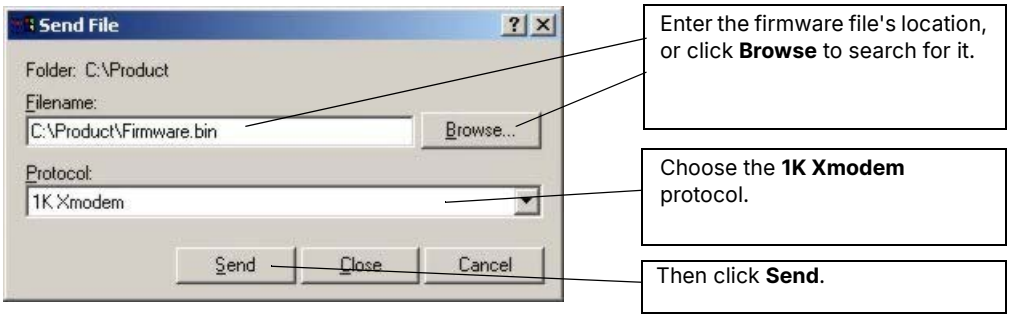
4 Enter `Y` and wait for the “Starting XMODEM upload” message before activating XMODEM upload on your terminal.

Figure 23 Starting Xmodem Upload

```
Do you want to start the recovery process (Y/N)? (default N)
Starting XMODEM upload (CRC mode)....
C
```

5 This is an example Xmodem configuration upload using HyperTerminal. Click **Transfer**, then **Send File** to display the following screen.

Figure 24 Example Xmodem Upload



6 Wait for about three and a half minutes for the Xmodem upload to finish.

Figure 25 Recovery Image Upload Complete

```
Total  1867264 bytes received.
programming .....................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................

OK


> 
```

7 Enter `atgo`. The Zyxel Device starts up. If “Connect a computer to port 1 and FTP to 192.168.1.1 to upload the new file” displays on the screen, the firmware file is damaged and you need to use the procedure in Section 23.10 on page 180 to recover the firmware.

Figure 26 atgo Debug Command

```
> atgo
Booting...
```

23.10 Restoring the Firmware

This procedure requires the Zyxel Device’s firmware. Download the firmware package from www.zyxel.com and unzip it. The firmware file uses a .bin extension, for example, "1.01(XL.0)C0.bin". Do the following after you have obtained the firmware file.

Note: This section is not for normal firmware uploads. You only need to use this section if you need to recover the firmware.

1 Connect your computer to the Zyxel Device’s port **1** (only port **1** can be used).

2 The Zyxel Device’s FTP server IP address for firmware recovery is 192.168.1.1, so set your computer to use a static IP address from 192.168.1.2 ~192.168.1.254.

3 Use an FTP client on your computer to connect to the Zyxel Device. For example, in the Windows command prompt, type `ftp 192.168.1.1`. Keep the console session connected in order to see when the firmware recovery finishes.

4 Hit enter to log in anonymously.

5 Set the transfer mode to binary (type `bin`).

6 Transfer the firmware file from your computer to the Zyxel Device. Enter `put` followed by the path and name of the firmware file. This examples uses `put e:\ftproot\ZLD FW \1.01(XL.0)C0.bin`.

Figure 27 FTP Firmware Transfer Command

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220-=(<*>)=-.:. (( Welcome to PureFTPd 1.0.11 )) .:.-=(<*>)=-
220-You are user number 1 of 50 allowed
220-Local time is now 21:33 and the load is 0.01. Server port: 21.
220-Only anonymous FTP is allowed here
220 You will be disconnected after 15 minutes of inactivity.
User (192.168.1.1:(none)):
230 Anonymous user logged in
ftp> bi
200 TYPE is now 8-bit binary
ftp> put E:\ftproot\ZLD_FW\100XL0c0\1.00(XL.0)C0.bin_
```

7 Wait for the file transfer to complete.

Figure 28 FTP Firmware Transfer Complete

```
200 PORT command successful
150 Connecting to port 1564
226-87.0 Mbytes free disk space
226-File successfully transferred
226 3.231 seconds (measured here), 10.83 Mbytes per second
ftp: 36708858 bytes sent in 3.23Seconds 11350.91Kbytes/sec.
ftp> _
```

8 After the transfer is complete, “Firmware received” or “ZLD-current received” displays. Wait (up to four minutes) while the Zyxel Device recovers the firmware.

Figure 29 Firmware Received and Recovery Started

```
Firmware received ...

[Update Filesystem]
       Updating Code
       ..
```

9 The console session displays “done” when the firmware recovery is complete. Then the Zyxel Device automatically restarts.

Figure 30 Firmware Recovery Complete and Restart

```
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
       done

[Update Kernel]
       Extracting Kernel Image
       ..
       done
       Writing Kernel Image ... done

[Update BootModule]
       Extracting BootModule Image
       .
       done
       Writing BootModule
       ..................................................................
.....................................................        done
Restarting system.
```

10 The username prompt displays after the Zyxel Device starts up successfully. The firmware recovery process is now complete and the Zyxel Device is ready to use.

Figure 31 Restart Complete

```
Setting the System Clock using the Hardware Clock as reference...
System Clock set. Local time: Sun Jan 26 21:40:24 UTC 2003

Cleaning: /tmp /var/lock /var/run.
Initializing random number generator... done.
Initializing Debug Account Authentication Seed (DAAS)... done.
Lionic device init successfully
cavium nitrox device CN1005 init complete
INIT: Entering runlevel: 3
Starting zylog daemon: zylogd zylog starts.
Starting syslog-ng.
Starting uam daemon.
Starting app patrol daemon.
Starting periodic command scheduler: cron.
Start system daemon....
Got LINK_CHANGE
Port [0] is up --> Group [0] is up
Applying system configuration file, please wait...
System is configured successfully with startup-config.conf

Welcome

Username:
```

CHAPTER 24
Logs

This chapter provides information about the Zyxel Device's logs.

Note: When the system log reaches the maximum number of log messages, new log messages automatically overwrite existing log messages, starting with the oldest existing log message first.

See Section 1.2 on page 13 for the maximum number of system log messages in the Zyxel Device.

24.1 Log Commands Summary

The following table describes the values required for many log commands. Other values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 90 Input Values for Log Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
module_name	The name of the category; kernel, syslog, ... The default category includes debugging messages generated by open source software. The all category includes all messages in all categories.
ap_mac	The Ethernet MAC address for the specified Access Point.
pri	The log priority. Enter one of the following values: alert, crit, debug, emerg, error, info, notice, or warn.
ipv4	The standard version 4 IP address (such as 192.168.1.1).
service	The service object name.
keyword	The keyword search string. You may use up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
log_proto_accept	The log protocol. Enter one of the following values: icmp, tcp, udp, or others.
config_interface	The interface name. Enter up to 15 alphanumeric characters, including hyphens and underscores.

The following sections list the logging commands.

24.1.1 Log Entries Commands

This table lists the commands to look at log entries.

Table 91 logging Commands: Log Entries

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show logging entries [priority pri] [category module_name] [srcip ip] [dstip ip] [service service_name] [begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>] [keyword keyword]`	Displays the selected entries in the system log. PRI: alert | crit | debug | emerg | error | info | notice | warn *keyword*: You can use alphanumeric and `()+/:=?!*#@$_%-` characters, and it can be up to 63 characters long. This searches the message, source, destination, and notes fields.
`show logging entries field field [begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>]`	Displays the selected fields in the system log. *field*: time | msg | src | dst | note | pri | cat | all

24.1.2 System Log Commands

This table lists the commands for the system log settings.

Table 92 logging Commands: System Log Settings

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show logging status system-log`	Displays the current settings for the system log.
`logging system-log category module_name {disable | level normal | level all}`	Specifies what kind of information, if any, is logged in the system log and debugging log for the specified category.
`[no] logging system-log suppression interval <10..600>`	Sets the log consolidation interval for the system log. The `no` command sets the interval to ten.
`[no] logging system-log suppression`	Enables log consolidation in the system log. The `no` command disables log consolidation in the system log.
`[no] connectivity-check continuous-log activate`	Has the Zyxel Device generate a log for each connectivity check. The no command has the Zyxel Device only log the first connectivity check.
`show connectivity-check continuous-log status`	Displays whether or not the Zyxel Device generates a log for each connectivity check.
`clear logging system-log buffer`	Clears the system log.

24.1.2.1 System Log Command Example

The following command displays the current status of the system log.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show logging status system-log
18 events logged
suppression active  : yes
suppression interval: 10
category settings   :
    user              : normal , zysh              : normal ,
    built-in-service  : normal , system            : normal ,
    system-monitoring : no     , connectivity-check: normal ,
    device-ha         : normal , pki               : normal ,
    interface         : normal , interface-statistics: no     ,
    traffic-log       : no     , file-manage       : normal ,
    wlan              : normal , daily-report      : normal ,
    dhcp              : normal , default           : all    ,
    capwap            : normal , wlan-monitor      : normal ,
    wlan-rogueap      : normal , wlan-frame-capture: normal ,
    wlan-dcs          : normal , wlan-load-balancing: normal ,
```

24.1.3 Debug Log Commands

This table lists the commands for the debug log settings.

Table 93 logging Commands: Debug Log Settings

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show logging debug status`	Displays the current settings for the debug log.
`show logging debug entries [priority` *`pri`*`] [category` *`module_name`*`] [srcip` *`ip`*`] [dstip` *`ip`*`] [service` *`service_name`*`] [begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>] [keyword` *`keyword`*`]`	Displays the selected entries in the debug log. *`pri`*: alert | crit | debug | emerg | error | info | notice | warn *`keyword`*: You can use alphanumeric and `()+/:=?!*#@$_%-` characters, and it can be up to 63 characters long.This searches the message, source, destination, and notes fields.
`show logging debug entries field` *`field`* `[begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>]`	Displays the selected fields in the debug log. *`field`*: time | msg | src | dst | note | pri | cat | all
`[no] logging debug suppression`	Enables log consolidation in the debug log. The `no` command disables log consolidation in the debug log.
`[no] logging debug suppression interval <10..600>`	Sets the log consolidation interval for the debug log. The `no` command sets the interval to ten.
`clear logging debug buffer`	Clears the debug log.

24.1.4 Remote Syslog Server Log Commands

This table lists the commands for the remote syslog server settings.

Table 94 logging Commands: Remote Syslog Server Settings

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show logging status syslog`	Displays the current settings for the remote servers.
`[no] logging syslog <1..4>`	Enables the specified remote server. The no command disables the specified remote server.
`[no] logging syslog <1..4> address {ip | hostname}`	Sets the URL or IP address of the specified remote server. The no command clears this field. *hostname*: You may up to 63 alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), or periods (.), but the first character cannot be a period.
`[no] logging syslog <1..4> {disable | level normal | level all}`	Specifies what kind of information, if any, is logged for the specified category.
`[no] logging syslog <1..4> facility {local_1 | local_2 | local_3 | local_4 | local_5 | local_6 | local_7}`	Sets the log facility for the specified remote server. The no command sets the facility to local_1.
`[no] logging syslog <1..4> format {cef | vrpt}`	Sets the format of the log information. `cef`: Common Event Format, syslog-compatible format. `vrpt`: Zyxel's Vantage Report, syslog-compatible format.

24.1.5 Email Profile Log Commands

Note: Not all models support the email profile log commands.

This table lists the commands for the email profile settings.

Table 95 logging Commands: Email Profile Settings

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show logging status mail`	Displays the current settings for the email profiles.
`[no] logging mail <1..2>`	Enables the specified email profile. The no command disables the specified e-mail profile.
`[no] logging mail <1..2> address {ip | hostname}`	Sets the URL or IP address of the mail server for the specified email profile. The no command clears the mail server field. *hostname*: You may up to 63 alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), or periods (.), but the first character cannot be a period.
`logging mail <1..2> sending_now`	Sends mail for the specified email profile immediately, according to the current settings.
`[no] logging mail <1..2> authentication`	Enables SMTP authentication. The no command disables SMTP authentication.

Table 95 logging Commands: Email Profile Settings (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] logging mail <1..2> authentication username username password password`	Sets the username and password required by the SMTP mail server. The no command clears the username and password fields. *username*: You can use alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), and dashes (-), and it can be up to 31 characters long. *password*: You can use most printable ASCII characters. You cannot use square brackets [ ], double quotation marks (“), question marks (?), tabs or spaces. It can be up to 31 characters long.
`[no] logging mail <1..2> {send-log-to | send-alerts-to} e_mail`	Sets the email address for logs or alerts. The no command clears the specified field. *e_mail*: You can use up to 63 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-), and you must use the @ character.
`[no] logging mail <1..2> subject subject`	Sets the subject line when the Zyxel Device mails to the specified email profile. The no command clears this field. *subject*: You can use up to 60 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), dashes (-), or !@#$%*( )+=;:’,./ characters.
`[no] logging mail <1..2> subject-appending {date-time | system-name}`	Sets the Zyxel Device to add the system date and time or the system name to the subject when the Zyxel Device mails to the specified email profile. The no command sets the Zyxel Device to not add the system date/time or system name to the subject.
`[no] logging mail <1..2> category module_name level {alert | all}`	Specifies what kind of information is logged for the specified category. The no command disables logging for the specified category.
`[no] logging mail <1..2> schedule {full | hourly}`	Sets the email schedule for the specified e-mail profile. The no command clears the schedule field.
`logging mail <1..2> schedule daily hour <0..23> minute <0..59>`	Sets a daily email schedule for the specified e-mail profile.
`logging mail <1..2> schedule weekly day day hour <0..23> minute <0..59>`	Sets a weekly email schedule for the specified e-mail profile. *day*: sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat

24.1.5.1 Email Profile Command Examples

Note: Not all models support the email profile log commands.

The following commands set up email log 1.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# logging mail 1 address mail.zyxel.com.tw
Router(config)# logging mail 1 subject AAA
Router(config)# logging mail 1 authentication username lachang.li password
XXXXXX
Router(config)# logging mail 1 send-log-to lachang.li@zyxel.com.tw
Router(config)# logging mail 1 send-alerts-to lachang.li@zyxel.com.tw
Router(config)# logging mail 1 from lachang.li@zyxel.com.tw
Router(config)# logging mail 1 schedule weekly day mon hour 3 minute 3
Router(config)# logging mail 1
```

24.1.6 Console Port Log Commands

This table lists the commands for the console port settings.

Table 96 logging Commands: Console Port Settings

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show logging status console`	Displays the current settings for the console log. (This log is not discussed above.)
`[no] logging console`	Enables the console log. The no command disables the console log.
`logging console category module_name level {alert | crit | debug | emerg | error | info | notice | warn}`	Controls whether or not debugging information for the specified priority is displayed in the console log, if logging for this category is enabled.
`[no] logging console category module_name`	Enables logging for the specified category in the console log. The no command disables logging.

24.1.7 Access Point Logging Commands

This table lists the commands for the Access Point settings.

Note: For the purposes of this device's CLI, Access Points are referred to as WTPs.

Table 97 logging Commands: Access Point Settings

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show wtp-logging status system-log [ap_mac]`	Displays the system log for the specified AP.
`show wtp-logging entries [priority pri] [category module_name] [srcip ipv4] [dstip ipv4] [service service] [srciface config_interface] [dstiface config_interface] [protocol log_proto_accept][begin <1..512> end <1..512>] [keyword keyword] [ap_mac]`	Displays only the specified log entries for the specified AP.
`show wtp-logging entries field {srcif|dstif|proto|time|msg|src|dst|note|pri|cat|all} [begin <1..512> end <1..512>] [ap_mac]`	Displays only log entries for specified fields for the specified AP. You can display a range of field entries from 1-512.
`show wtp-logging debug status ap_mac`	Displays the debug status of the specified AP.

Table 97 logging Commands: Access Point Settings (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
show wtp-logging debug entries [priority *pri*] [category *module_name*] [srcip *ipv4*] [dstip *ipv4*] [service *service*] [srciface *config_interface*] [dstiface *config_interface*] [protocol *log_proto_accept*] [begin <1..512> end <1..512>] [keyword *keyword*] [*ap_mac*]	Display only the specified debug log entries for the specified AP.
show wtp-logging % debug entries field { srcif|dstif|proto |time|msg|src|dst|note|pri|cat|all} [begin <1..1024> end <1..1024>] [*ap_mac*]	Displays only the log entries for the specified fields for the specified AP. You can display a range of field entries from 1-1024.
show wtp-logging status syslog [*ap_mac*]	Displays the logging status for the specified AP's syslog.
show wtp-logging status mail [*ap_mac*]	Displays the logging status for the specified AP's mail log.
show wtp-logging query-log *ap_mac*	Displays the specified AP's query log.
show wtp-logging query-dbg-log *ap_mac*	Displays the specified AP's query debug log.
show wtp-logging result-status	Displays the AP logging result status.
show wtp-logging dbg-result-status	Displays the AP logging debug result status.
show wtp-logging category	Displays the AP logging categories.
wtp-logging mail sending_now MAC	Sends the specified AP's mail log.
clear wtp-logging log-buffer MAC	Clears the specified AP's MAC address from the buffer.
[no] wtp-logging syslog *syslog_range* category *module_name* disable	Disables the logging of the specified syslog category.
[no] wtp-logging syslog *syslog_range* category *module_name* level {normal | all}	Enables logging of the specified syslog category and specifies the logging level.
[no] wtp-logging mail *mail_range* category *module_name* level {alert | all}	Enables mail logging on APs for the specified category.
[no] wtp-logging system-log category *module_name* level {normal | all }	Enables system logging on the APs for the specified category.
[no] wtp-logging system-log category *module_name* disable	Disables system logging on the APs for the specified category.
[no] wtp-logging debug suppression	Enables debug logging suppression. Use the no parameter to disable.
[no] wtp-logging debug suppression interval <10..600>	Enables debug logging suppression during the specified interval. Use the no parameter to disable.
[no] wtp-logging console	Enables logging of console activity. Use the no parameter to disable.
[no] wtp-logging console category *module_name* level *pri*	Enables logging of the specified category at the specified priority level.

CHAPTER 25
Reports and Reboot

This chapter provides information about the report associated commands and how to restart the Zyxel Device using commands. It also covers the daily report e-mail feature.

25.1 Report Commands Summary

The following sections list the report and session commands.

25.1.1 Report Commands

This table lists the commands for reports.

Table 98 report Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] report`	Begins data collection. The `no` command stops data collection.
`show report status`	Displays whether or not the Zyxel Device is collecting data and how long it has collected data.
`clear report [`*`interface_name`*`]`	Clears the report for the specified interface or for all interfaces.
`show report [`*`interface_name`* `{ip | service | url}]`	Displays the traffic report for the specified interface and controls the format of the report. Formats are: `ip` - traffic by IP address and direction `service` - traffic by service and direction `url` - hits by URL

25.1.2 Report Command Examples

The following commands start collecting data, display the traffic reports, and stop collecting data.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# show report lan ip
No. IP Address      User                  Amount          Direction
=================================================================
1   192.168.1.4     admin                 1273(bytes)     Outgoing
2   192.168.1.4     admin                 711(bytes)      Incoming
Router(config)# show report lan service
No. Port  Service          Amount          Direction
=================================================================
1   21    ftp              1273(bytes)     Outgoing
2   21    ftp              711(bytes)      Incoming
Router(config)# show report lan url
No. Hit        URL
=================================================================
1   1          140.114.79.60
Router(config)# show report status
Report status: on
Collection period: 0 days 0 hours 0 minutes 18 seconds
```

25.2 Email Daily Report Commands

Note: Not all models support the email daily report commands.

The following table identifies the values used in some of these commands. Other input values are discussed with the corresponding commands.

Table 99 Input Values for Email Daily Report Commands

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
e_mail	An e-mail address. You can use up to 80 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), periods (.), or dashes (-), and you must use the @ character.

Use these commands to have the Zyxel Device e-mail you system statistics every day. You must use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode before you can use these commands.

Table 100 Email Daily Report Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show daily-report status`	Displays the e-mail daily report settings.
`daily-report`	Enter the daily report sub-command mode.
`[no] activate`	Turns daily e-mail reports on or off.
`smtp-address {`*`ip`*` | `*`hostname`*`}`	Sets the SMTP mail server IP address or domain name.
`[no] smtp-auth activate`	Enables or disables SMTP authentication.
`smtp-auth username `*`username`*` password `*`password`*	Sets the username and password for SMTP authentication.
`no smtp-address`	Resets the SMTP mail server configuration.

Table 100 Email Daily Report Commands (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
no smtp-auth username	Resets the authentication configuration.
mail-subject set *subject*	Configures the subject of the report e-mails.
no mail-subject set	Clears the configured subject for the report e-mails.
[no] mail-subject append system-name	Determines whether the system name will be appended to the subject of report mail.
[no] mail-subject append date-time	Determine whether the sending date-time will be appended at subject of the report e-mails.
mail-from *e_mail*	Sets the sender value of the report e-mails.
mail-to-1 *e_mail*	Sets to whom the Zyxel Device sends the report e-mails (up to five recipients).
mail-to-2 *e_mail*	See above.
mail-to-3 *e_mail*	See above.
mail-to-4 *e_mail*	See above.
mail-to-5 *e_mail*	See above.
[no] item ap-sta	This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the AP station statistics will be included in the report e-mails.
[no] item ap-traffic	This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the AP traffic statistics will be included in the report e-mails.
[no] item cpu-usage	Determines whether or not CPU usage statistics are included in the report e-mails.
[no] item mem-usage	Determines whether or not memory usage statistics are included in the report e-mails.
[no] item port-usage	Determines whether or not port usage statistics are included in the report e-mails.
[no] item station-count	This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the station statistics are included in the report e-mails.
[no] item wtp-tx	This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the Zyxel Device's outgoing traffic statistics are included in the report e-mails.
[no] item wtp-rx	This command is supported when the Zyxel Device is in standalone mode. Determines whether or not the Zyxel Device's incoming traffic statistics are included in the report e-mails.
smtp-port <1..65535>	Sets the SMTP service port.
no smtp-port	Resets the SMTP service port configuration.

Table 100 Email Daily Report Commands (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
smtp-tls {tls|starttls}	Sets how you want communications between the SMTP mail server and the Zyxel Device to be encrypted. tls: to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS). starttls: to upgrade a plain text connection to a secure connection using SSL/TLS.
[no] smtp-tls activate	Encrypts the communications between the SMTP mail server and the Zyxel Device. The no command disables communication encryption.
schedule hour <0..23> minute <00..59>	Sets the time for sending out the report e-mails.
[no] reset-counter	Determines whether or not to clear the report statistics data after successfully sending out a report e-mail.
reset-counter-now	Discards all report data and starts all of the counters over at zero.
send-now	Sends the daily e-mail report immediately. let user actively send out the report e-mails.

25.2.1 Email Daily Report Example

Note: Not all models support the email daily report commands.

This example sets the Zyxel Device to send a daily report e-mail.

```
Router(config)# daily-report
Router(config-daily-report)# no activate
Router(config-daily-report)# smtp-address example-SMTP-mail-server.com
Router(config-daily-report)# mail-subject set test subject
Router(config-daily-report)# no mail-subject append system-name
Router(config-daily-report)# mail-subject append date-time
Router(config-daily-report)# mail-from my-email@example.com
Router(config-daily-report)# no mail-to-2
Router(config-daily-report)# no mail-to-3
Router(config-daily-report)# mail-to-4 my-email@example.com
Router(config-daily-report)# no mail-to-5
Router(config-daily-report)# smtp-auth activate
Router(config-daily-report)# smtp-auth username 12345 password pass12345
Router(config-daily-report)# schedule hour 13 minutes 57
Router(config-daily-report)# no schedule reset-counter
Router(config-daily-report)# item cpu-usage
Router(config-daily-report)# item mem-usage
Router(config-daily-report)# item port-usage
Router(config-daily-report)# activate
Router(config-daily-report)# exit
Router(config)#
```

This displays the email daily report settings and has the Zyxel Device send the report now.

```
Router(config)# show daily-report  status
email daily report status
=========================
activate: no
scheduled time: 00:00
reset counter: no
smtp address:
smtp port: 25
smtp auth: no
smtp username:
smtp password:
mail subject:
append system name: no
append date time: no
mail from:
mail-to-1:
mail-to-2:
mail-to-3:
mail-to-4:
mail-to-5:
cpu-usage: yes
mem-usage: yes
port-usage: yes
ap-sta: no
ap-traffic: no
Router(config)#
```

25.3 Reboot

Use these commands to restart the device. You can reboot the Zyxel Device when the Internet connection is slow or intermittent.

If you made changes in the CLI, you have to use the `write` command to save the configurations before you reboot. Otherwise, the changes are lost when you reboot.

Table 101 Reboot Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`reboot`	Restarts the Zyxel Device.
`schedule-reboot`	Enters the sub-command mode to configure schedule reboot settings.
`[no] activate`	Enables schedule reboot to have the Zyxel Device restart at a specific time on selected days of the week. By scheduling a reboot, you can have the Zyxel Device refresh the network connections at a specified time, allowing automatic reconnection with WiFi clients in case of a connection failure.

Table 101 Reboot Commands (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] reboot-time <hh:mm>`	Specifies the time of the day (in 24-hour format) to have the Zyxel Device automatically restart. For example, 23:00 is 11:00 PM. The no command removes the reboot time setting you configured.
`{no] <sun| mon| tue| wed| thu| fri| sat>`	Specifies each day of the week to have the Zyxel Device automatically restart. The no command removes the reboot weekday setting you configured.
`exit`	Exits configuration mode for this profile.
`show schedule-reboot status`	Displays schedule reboot settings.

CHAPTER 26
Session Timeout

26.1 Session Timeout Commands

Use these commands to modify and display the session timeout values. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 102 Session Timeout Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`session timeout {udp-connect <1..300> | udp-deliver <1..300> | icmp <1..300>}`	Sets the timeout for UDP sessions to connect or deliver and for ICMP sessions.
`session timeout { tcp-close <1..300> | tcp-closewait <1..300> | tcp-established <1..432000> | tcp-finwait <1..300> | tcp-lastack <1..300> | tcp-synrecv <1..300> | tcp-synsent <1..300> | tcp-timewait <1..300> | udp-connect <1..300> | ucp-deliver <1..300> | icmp <1..300> }`	Sets the timeout for TCP sessions in the ESTABLISHED, SYN_RECV, FIN_WAIT, SYN_SENT, CLOSE_WAIT, LAST_ACK, or TIME_WAIT state.
`show session timeout {icmp | tcp-timewait | udp}`	Displays ICMP, TCP, and UDP session timeouts.

26.1.1 Session Timeout Commands Example

The following example sets the UDP session connect timeout to 10 seconds, the UDP deliver session timeout to 15 seconds, and the ICMP timeout to 15 seconds.

```
Router(config)# session timeout udp-connect 10
Router(config)# session timeout udp-deliver 15
Router(config)# session timeout icmp 15
Router(config)# show session timeout udp
UDP session connect timeout: 10 seconds
UDP session deliver timeout: 15 seconds
Router(config)# show session timeout icmp
ICMP session timeout: 15 seconds
```

CHAPTER 27
LEDs

This chapter describes two features that controls the LEDs of your Zyxel Device - Locator and Suppression.

27.1 LED Suppression Mode

The LED Suppression feature allows you to control how the LEDs of your Zyxel Device behave after it's ready. The default LED suppression setting of your AP is different depending on your Zyxel Device model.

Note: When the Zyxel Device is booting or performing firmware upgrade, the LEDs will lit regardless of the setting in LED suppression.

27.2 LED Suppression Commands

Use these commands to set how you want the LEDs to behave after the device is ready. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 103 LED Suppression Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`led_suppress enable`	Sets the LEDs of your Zyxel Device to turn off after it's ready.
`led_suppress disable`	Sets the LEDs to stay lit after the Zyxel Device is ready.
`show led_suppress status`	Displays whether LED suppression mode is enabled or disabled on the Zyxel Device.

27.2.1 LED Suppression Commands Example

The following example activates LED suppression mode and displays the settings..

```
Router(config)# led_suppress enable
Router(config)# show led_suppress status
suppress mode status: Enable
```

27.3 LED Locator

The LED locator feature identifies the location of your WAC among several devices in the network. You can run this feature and set a timer.

27.4 LED Locator Commands

Use these commands to run the LED locator feature. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 104 LED Locator Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`led_locator on`	Enables the LED locator function. It will show the actual location of the WAC between several devices in the network.
`led_locator off`	Disables the LED locator function.
`led_locator blink-timer <1..60>`	Sets a time interval between 1 and 60 minutes to stop the locator LED from blinking.
`show led_locator status`	Displays whether LED locator function is enabled and the timer setting.

27.4.1 LED Locator Commands Example

The following example turns on the LED locator feature and displays the settings.

```
Router(config)# led_locator on
Router(config)# show led_locator status
Locator LED Status : ON
Locator LED Time : 10
```

CHAPTER 28
Antenna Switch

This chapter shows you how to adjust coverage depending on the orientation of the antenna.

28.1 Antenna Switch Overview

On the Zyxel Device that comes with internal antennas and also has an antenna switch, you can adjust coverage depending on the antenna orientation for the Zyxel Device radios using the web configurator, the command line interface (CLI) or a physical switch.

Note: With the physical antenna switch, you apply the same antenna orientation settings to both radios. You can set the radios to have different settings while using the web configurator or the command line interface.

Note: The antenna switch is not available in every model. Please see Section 1.2 on page 13, check the User's Guide or datasheet, or refer to the product page at *www.zyxel.com* to see if your Zyxel Device has an antenna switch.

28.2 Antenna Switch Commands

The following table describes the commands available for the antenna switch function. You must use the `configure terminal` command before you can use these commands.

Table 105 Antenna Switch Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`antenna config` *`slot_name`* `chain3 {ceiling | wall}`	This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that allows you to change antenna orientation settings on a per-radio basis. Adjusts coverage depending on each radio's antenna orientation for better coverage.
`[no] antenna sw-control enable`	This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that has a physical antenna switch. Enables the adjustment of coverage depending on the orientation of the antenna for the Zyxel Device radios using the web configurator or the command line interface (CLI). Note: The antenna switch in the web configurator or CLI has priority over the physical antenna switch if you enable software control. The no command disables adjustment through the web configurator or the command line interface (CLI). You can still adjust coverage using a physical antenna switch.

Table 105 Antenna Switch Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`selectable-antenna config {ceiling | wall}`	This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that allows you to change antenna orientation settings on a per-AP basis. Adjusts coverage depending on the antenna orientation of the Zyxel Device radios for better coverage.
`show antenna status`	This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that has a physical antenna switch or allows you to change antenna orientation settings on a per-AP basis. Displays whether software control of the antenna switch is enabled and the antenna orientation.
`show selectable-antenna status`	This command is available only on the Zyxel Device that allows you to change antenna orientation settings on a per-AP basis. Displays the antenna orientation.
`show wlan all`	Displays the antenna settings for all radios on the Zyxel Device.

28.2.1 Antenna Switch Commands Examples

The following example enables software control of the antenna switch and displays the settings.

```
Router(config)# antenna sw-control enable
Router(config)# show antenna status
SW-Control: Enable
Radio 1: Ceiling
Radio 2: Ceiling

Router(config)#
```

The following example sets the antenna orientation to “ceiling” on a per-AP basis and displays the settings.

```
Router(config)# selectable-antenna config ceiling
Router(config)# show selectable-antenna status
Selectable Antenna Status: Ceiling
Router(config)#
```

CHAPTER 29
Diagnostics

This chapter covers how to use the diagnostics feature.

29.1 Diagnostics Overview

The diagnostics feature provides an easy way for you to generate a file containing the Zyxel Device's configuration and diagnostic information. You may need to generate this file and send it to customer support during troubleshooting.

29.2 Diagnosis Commands

The following table lists the commands that you can use to have the Zyxel Device collect diagnostics information. Use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode to be able to use these commands.

Table 106 diagnosis Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`diag-info collect`	Has the Zyxel Device create a new diagnostic file.
`diaginfo collect wtp`	Has the Zyxel Device create a new diagnostic file.
`show diag-info`	Displays the name, size, and creation date (in yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss format) of the diagnostic file.
`show diaginfo collect wtp status`	Displays the status of diagnostic data collection. It also shows the name of the diagnostic file.
`show tech-support <category> [commands]`	Displays diagnostic information about the specified category of settings on the console when you access the CLI using SSH (Secure SHell) or a terminal emulation program on a computer connected to the Zyxel Device's console port.

29.2.1 Diagnosis Commands Examples

The following example creates a diagnostic file and displays its name, size, and creation date.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# diag-info collect
Please wait, collecting information
Router(config)# show diag-info
Filename  : diaginfo-20070423.tar.bz2
File size : 1259 KB
Date      : 2007-04-23 09:55:09
```

The following example creates a diagnostic file and displays the status of data collection and its file name.

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# diaginfo collect wtp
zysudo uid=0,euid=0
Please wait, collecting information
Router(config)# show diaginfo collect wtp status
Status: Collecting (29 %)
Filename  : none
Router(config)#
```

CHAPTER 30
Maintenance Tools

Use the maintenance tool commands to check the conditions of other devices through the Zyxel Device. The maintenance tools can help you to troubleshoot network problems.

Here are maintenance tool commands that you can use in privilege mode.

Table 107 Maintenance Tools Commands in Privilege Mode

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`packet-trace [interface interface_name] [ip-proto {<0..255> | protocol_name | any}] [src-host {ip | hostname | any}] [dst-host {ip | hostname | any}] [port {<1..65535> | any}] [file] [duration <1..3600>] [extension-filter filter_extension]` `traceroute {ip | hostname}`	Sends traffic through the specified interface with the specified protocol, source address, destination address, and/or port number. If you specify file, the Zyxel Device dumps the traffic to /packet_trace/packet_trace_interface. Use FTP to retrieve the files (see Section 23.6 on page 173). If you do not assign the duration, the Zyxel Device keeps dumping traffic until you use Ctrl-C. Use the extension filter to extend the use of this command. *protocol_name*: You can use the name, instead of the number, for some IP protocols, such as tcp, udp, icmp, and so on. The names consist of 1-16 alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), or dashes (-). The first character cannot be a number. *hostname*: You can use up to 252 alphanumeric characters, dashes (-), or periods (.). The first character cannot be a period. *filter_extension*: You can use 1-256 alphanumeric characters, spaces, or '()+,/ :=?;!*#@$_%.- characters.
`traceroute {ip | hostname}`	Displays the route taken by packets to the specified destination. Use Ctrl+c when you want to return to the prompt.
`[no] packet-capture activate`	Performs a packet capture that captures network traffic going through the set Zyxel Device's interface(s). Studying these packet captures may help you identify network problems. The no command stops the running packet capture on the Zyxel Device. Note: Use the `packet-capture configure` command to configure the packet-capture settings before using this command.

Table 107 Maintenance Tools Commands in Privilege Mode (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`packet-capture configure`	Enters the sub-command mode.
`duration <0..300>`	Sets a time limit in seconds for the capture. The Zyxel Device stops the capture and generates the capture file when either this period of time has passed or the file reaches the size specified using the `files-size` command below. 0 means there is no time limit.
`file-suffix <profile_name>`	Specifies text to add to the end of the file name (before the dot and filename extension) to help you identify the packet capture files. Modifying the file suffix also avoids making new capture files that overwrite existing files of the same name. The file name format is "interface name-file suffix.cap", for example "vlan2-packet-capture.cap".
`files-size <1..10000>`	Specify a maximum size limit in kilobytes for the total combined size of all the capture files on the Zyxel Device, including any existing capture files and any new capture files you generate. The Zyxel Device stops the capture and generates the capture file when either the file reaches this size or the time period specified (using the `duration` command above) expires. Note: If you have existing capture files you may need to set this size larger or delete existing capture files.
`host-ip {ip-address | profile_name | any>`	Sets a host IP address or a host IP address object for which to capture packets. `any` means to capture packets for all hosts.
`host-port <0..65535>`	If you set the IP Type to `any`, `tcp`, or `udp` using the `ip-type` command below, you can specify the port number of traffic to capture.
`iface {add | del} {interface_name | virtual_interface_name}`	Adds or deletes an interface or a virtual interface for which to capture packets to the capture interfaces list.
`ip-type {icmp | igmp | igrp | pim | ah | esp | vrrp | udp | tcp | any}`	Sets the protocol of traffic for which to capture packets. `any` means to capture packets for all types of traffic.
`snaplen <68..1512>`	Specifies the maximum number of bytes to capture per packet. The Zyxel Device automatically truncates packets that exceed this size. As a result, when you view the packet capture files in a packet analyzer, the actual size of the packets may be larger than the size of captured packets.
`show packet-capture status`	Displays whether a packet capture is ongoing.
`show packet-capture config`	Displays current packet capture settings.

30.0.1 Command Examples

Some packet-trace command examples are shown below.

```
Router# packet-trace duration 3
tcpdump: listening on eth0
19:24:43.239798 192.168.1.10 > 192.168.1.1: icmp: echo request
19:24:43.240199 192.168.1.1 > 192.168.1.10: icmp: echo reply
19:24:44.258823 192.168.1.10 > 192.168.1.1: icmp: echo request
19:24:44.259219 192.168.1.1 > 192.168.1.10: icmp: echo reply
19:24:45.268839 192.168.1.10 > 192.168.1.1: icmp: echo request
19:24:45.269238 192.168.1.1 > 192.168.1.10: icmp: echo reply

6 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

```
Router# packet-trace interface br0 ip-proto icmp file extension-filter and
src h
ost 192.168.105.133 and dst host 192.168.105.40 -s 500 -n
tcpdump: listening on br0
07:26:51.731558 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:26:52.742666 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:26:53.752774 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:26:54.762887 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)

8 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

```
Router# packet-trace interface br0 ip-proto icmp file extension-filter -s
500 -n
tcpdump: listening on br0
07:24:07.898639 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:24:07.900450 192.168.105.40 > 192.168.105.133: icmp: echo reply
07:24:08.908749 192.168.105.133 > 192.168.105.40: icmp: echo request (DF)
07:24:08.910606 192.168.105.40 > 192.168.105.133: icmp: echo reply

8 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

```
Router# traceroute www.zyxel.com
traceroute to www.zyxel.com (203.160.232.7), 30 hops max, 38 byte packets
 1  172.23.37.254  3.049 ms  1.947 ms  1.979 ms
 2  172.23.6.253  2.983 ms  2.961 ms  2.980 ms
 3  172.23.6.1  5.991 ms  5.968 ms  6.984 ms
 4  * * *
```

Here are maintenance tool commands that you can use in configure mode.

Table 108 Maintenance Tools Commands in Configuration Mode

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`show arp-table`	Displays the current Address Resolution Protocol table.
`arp IP` *`mac_address`*	Edits or creates an ARP table entry.
`no arp` *`ip`*	Removes an ARP table entry.

The following example creates an ARP table entry for IP address 192.168.1.10 and MAC address 01:02:03:04:05:06. Then it shows the ARP table and finally removes the new entry.

```
Router# arp 192.168.1.10 01:02:03:04:05:06
Router# show arp-table
Address                HWtype  HWaddress          Flags Mask           Iface
192.168.1.10            ether   01:02:03:04:05:06   CM                    lan
192.168.1.254           ether   00:04:80:9B:78:00   C                     lan
Router# no arp 192.168.1.10
Router# show arp-table
Address                HWtype  HWaddress          Flags Mask           Iface
192.168.1.10                    (incomplete)                             lan
192.168.1.254           ether   00:04:80:9B:78:00   C                     lan
```

30.0.1.1 Packet Capture Command Example

The following examples show how to configure packet capture settings and perform a packet capture. First you have to check whether a packet capture is running. This example shows no other packet capture is running. Then you can also check the current packet capture settings.

```
Router(config)# show packet-capture status
capture status: off
Router(config)#
Router(config)# show packet-capture config
iface: lan
ip-version: any
proto-type: any
host-port: 0
host-ip: any
file-suffix: lan-packet-capture
snaplen: 1500
duration: 0
file-size: 1000
```

Exit the sub-command mode and have the Zyxel Device capture packets according to the settings you just configured.

```
Router(packet-capture)# exit
Router(config)# packet-capture activate
Router(config)#
```

Manually stop the running packet capturing.

```
Router(config)# no packet-capture activate
Router(config)#
```

Check current packet capture status and list all packet captures the Zyxel Device has performed.

```
Router(config)# show packet-capture status
capture status: off
Router(config)# dir /packet_trace
File Name                                       Size     Modified Time
==============================================================================
lan-packet-capture.cap                        575160   2009-11-24 09:06:59
Router(config)#
```

You can use FTP to download a capture file. Open and study it using a packet analyzer tool (for example, Ethereal or Wireshark).

CHAPTER 31
Watchdog Timer

This chapter provides information about the Zyxel Device's watchdog timers.

31.1 Hardware Watchdog Timer

The hardware watchdog has the system restart if the hardware fails.

The `hardware-watchdog-timer` commands are for support engineers. It is recommended that you not modify the hardware watchdog timer settings.

Table 109 hardware-watchdog-timer Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] hardware-watchdog-timer <4..37>`	Sets how long the system's hardware can be unresponsive before resetting. The no command turns the timer off.
`show hardware-watchdog-timer status`	Displays the settings of the hardware watchdog timer.

31.2 Software Watchdog Timer

The software watchdog has the system restart if the core firmware fails.

The `software-watchdog-timer` commands are for support engineers. It is recommended that you not modify the software watchdog timer settings.

Table 110 software-watchdog-timer Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] software-watchdog-timer <10..600>`	Sets how long the system's core firmware can be unresponsive before resetting. The no command turns the timer off.
`show software-watchdog-timer status`	Displays the settings of the software watchdog timer.
`show software-watchdog-timer log`	Displays a log of when the software watchdog timer took effect.

31.3 Application Watchdog

The application watchdog has the system restart a process that fails. These are the `app-watchdog` commands.Use the `configure terminal` command to enter the configuration mode to be able to use these commands.

Table 111 app-watchdog Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
`[no] app-watch-dog activate`	Turns the application watchdog timer on or off.
`[no] app-watch-dog console-print {always|once}`	Display debug messages on the console (every time they occur or once). The no command changes the setting back to the default.
`[no] app-watch-dog interval <5..60>`	Sets how frequently (in seconds) the Zyxel Device checks the system processes. The no command changes the setting back to the default.
`[no] app-watch-dog retry-count <1..5>`	Set how many times the Zyxel Device is to re-check a process before considering it failed. The no command changes the setting back to the default.
`[no] app-watch-dog alert`	Has the Zyxel Device send an alert the user when the system is out of memory or disk space.
`[no] app-watch-dog disk-threshold min <1..100> max <1..100>`	Sets the percentage thresholds for sending a disk usage alert. The Zyxel Device starts sending alerts when disk usage exceeds the maximum (the second threshold you enter). The Zyxel Device stops sending alerts when the disk usage drops back below the minimum threshold (the first threshold you enter). The no command changes the setting back to the default.
`[no] app-watch-dog mem-threshold min` *`threshold_min`* `max` *`threshold_max`*	Sets the percentage thresholds for sending a memory usage alert. The Zyxel Device starts sending alerts when memory usage exceeds the maximum (the second threshold you enter). The Zyxel Device stops sending alerts when the memory usage drops back below the minimum threshold (the first threshold you enter). The no command changes the setting back to the default.
`show app-watch-dog config`	Displays the application watchdog timer settings.
`show app-watch-dog monitor-list`	Display the list of applications that the application watchdog is monitoring.

31.3.1 Application Watchdog Commands Example

The following example displays the application watchdog configuration and lists the processes that the application watchdog is monitoring.

```
Router(config)# show app-watch-dog monitor-list
#app_name       min_process_count       max_process_count(negative integer
means unlimited)
uamd                    1                           -1
policyd                 1                           -1
classify                1                           -1
resd                    1                           -1
zyshd_wd                1                           -1
zylogd                  1                           -1
syslog-ng               1                           -1
zylogger                1                           -1
ddns_had                1                           -1
wdtd                    1                           -1
link_updown             1                           -1
fauthd                  1                           -1
signal_wrapper          1                           -1
capwap_srv      1                       1
capwap_client           1                           -1
Router(config)#
```

List of Commands (Alphabetical)

This section lists the commands and sub-commands in alphabetical order. Commands and subcommands appear at the same level.